

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
University of Toronto

CA20N

CI

- W21

PT. I

98

Government
Publications

WELCOME TO CANADIAN ENGLISH



A BASIC HANDBOOK
FOR STUDENTS
LIVING IN ONTARIO
PART I

*The Ontario Ministry of
Citizenship and Culture*

CA20N
CI
-84 W21
Pt. 1

WELCOME TO CANADIAN ENGLISH

A BASIC HANDBOOK FOR STUDENTS LIVING IN ONTARIO PART I

AUTHORS: LILLIAN BUTOVSKY/ESTHER PODOLIAK

*The Ontario Ministry of
Citizenship and Culture*

Susan Fish, Minister



Credits

Assistance with editing, writing and co-ordinating: John McHugh
Illustrations: Ken Gray, Advertising
Design: H. Bruce Dorland & Assoc.
Stamps on page 112 reproduced courtesy of Canada Post Corporation.

Published by the
Ministry of Citizenship and Culture.
Printed by the Queen's Printer
for Ontario
Province of Ontario
Toronto, Canada

© 1984 Government of Ontario

Copies available at \$2.00 from the
Ontario Government Bookstore,
880 Bay St., Toronto
for personal shopping.
Out-of-town customers write to
Publications Services Section,
5th Floor, 880 Bay St., Toronto, Ontario,
M7A 1N8. Telephone 965-6015.
Toll free long distance 1-800-268-7540;
in Northwestern Ontario 0-Zenith 67200.

CONTENTS

	Page
UNIT 1: SELF-INTRODUCTIONS	1
UNIT 2: GETTING CHANGE	9
UNIT 3: PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION	15
UNIT 4: INTRODUCTION OF OTHERS	21
UNIT 5: EMERGENCIES	30
UNIT 6: SAYING HOW YOU FEEL	36
UNIT 7: TELLING THE TIME	45
UNIT 8: GETTING HELP WITH ENGLISH	53
UNIT 9: TALKING ABOUT CALENDAR TIME	61
UNIT 10: FINDING YOUR WAY AROUND	71
UNIT 11: GETTING DIRECTIONS INSIDE	82
UNIT 12: SHOPPING FOR GROCERIES	92
UNIT 13: SHOPPING FOR CLOTHES	100
UNIT 14: IN THE POST OFFICE	110
UNIT 15: OCCUPATIONS	117

1. Introduction	1
2. Theoretical Framework	10
3. Methodology	20
4. Results	30
5. Discussion	40
6. Conclusion	50
7. References	60
8. Appendix	70
9. Glossary	80
10. Index	90

100

110

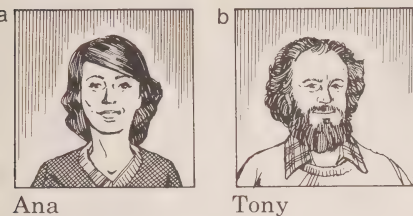
120

130

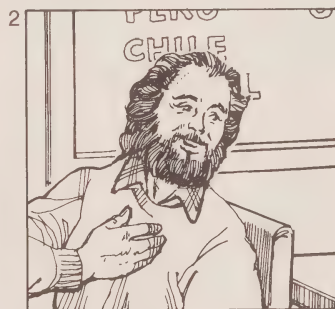
140

UNIT 1: SELF-INTRODUCTIONS

CONVERSATION: Tony Meets Ana



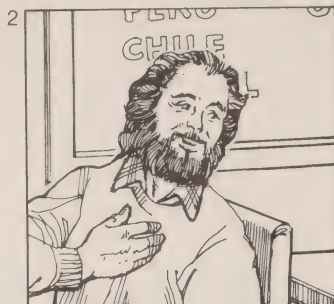
First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Hello.



I'm Tony.



I'm Ana.



Nice to meet you.



Where are you from?



Chile.

Other Sentences You May Hear

You can say the same thing in more than one way. For example, in Picture 1, Tony can say "Hi" instead of "Hello." Here are some other examples.

Picture 2: My name is Tony.

Picture 3: My name is Ana.

Picture 4: Glad to meet you.

Picture 5: What country are you from?

THE ENGLISH ALPHABET

There are 26 letters in English. Learn to spell your name in English.

Printed in Books			Printed by Hand		Written	
Capital Small			Capital Small		Capital Small	
1.	A	a	A	a	<i>A</i>	<i>a</i>
2.	B	b	B	b	<i>B</i>	<i>b</i>
3.	C	c	C	c	<i>C</i>	<i>c</i>
4.	D	d	D	d	<i>D</i>	<i>d</i>
5.	E	e	E	e	<i>E</i>	<i>e</i>
6.	F	f	F	f	<i>F</i>	<i>f</i>
7.	G	g	G	g	<i>G</i>	<i>g</i>
8.	H	h	H	h	<i>H</i>	<i>h</i>
9.	I	i	I	i	<i>I</i>	<i>i</i>
10.	J	j	J	j	<i>J</i>	<i>j</i>
11.	K	k	K	k	<i>K</i>	<i>k</i>
12.	L	l	L	l	<i>L</i>	<i>l</i>
13.	M	m	M	m	<i>M</i>	<i>m</i>
14.	N	n	N	n	<i>N</i>	<i>n</i>
15.	O	o	O	o	<i>O</i>	<i>o</i>
16.	P	p	P	p	<i>P</i>	<i>p</i>
17.	Q	q	Q	q	<i>Q</i>	<i>q</i>
18.	R	r	R	r	<i>R</i>	<i>r</i>
19.	S	s	S	s	<i>S</i>	<i>s</i>
20.	T	t	T	t	<i>T</i>	<i>t</i>
21.	U	u	U	u	<i>U</i>	<i>u</i>
22.	V	v	V	v	<i>V</i>	<i>v</i>
23.	W	w	W	w	<i>W</i>	<i>w</i>
24.	X	x	X	x	<i>X</i>	<i>x</i>
25.	Y	y	Y	y	<i>Y</i>	<i>y</i>
26.	Z	z	Z	z	<i>Z</i>	<i>z</i>



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

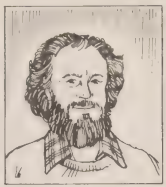
Ask some people in your class what their names are. You can say:
 What's your name?
 Please spell it. (or Please write it.)



Write each name in your notebook.

READING AND WRITING: Names and Titles on a Form

Here is Tony's name.



A

Tony	José	Faria
First name	Middle name	Last name

Here is Ana's name.



B

Ana	Sara	Pinto
First name or Given name	Middle name or Given name	Last name or Family name or Surname

Here are more names from different countries.

C

First name	Middle name	Family name
1. Nam	Thi	Nguyen
2. Peter		Kowalski
3. Samuel	Americo	Rodriguez
4. Yung Chiang		Su
5. Inder Pal		Sagoo



Fill this form out. Use your own name.

D

First name	Middle name	Last or Family name.

Here is Tony's name again, in block letters.

E

PRINT IN BLOCK LETTERS												
FAMILY OR LAST NAME	F	A	R	I	A							
FIRST AND MIDDLE NAME	T	O	N	Y		J	O	S	É			



Fill this form out. Use your own name.

F

PRINT IN BLOCK LETTERS												
FAMILY OR LAST NAME												
FIRST AND MIDDLE NAME												

This is Ana's family.



This is Ana Pinto. This is Miss Pinto or Ms. Pinto.



This is Ana's mother, Gladys Pinto. This is Mrs. Pinto or Ms. Pinto.



This is Ana's father, Ricardo Pinto. This is Mr. Pinto.

Learn these titles.

- Mr.** is pronounced Mister.
- Mrs.** is pronounced Missuz.
- Miss** is pronounced Miss.
- Ms.** is pronounced Miz.

Here is Ana's name and title on a form.

Surname (family name)										Please print										Initials		<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Ms.			
P	I	N	T	O														A	S						

Fill this form out for yourself.

Surname (family name)										Please print										Initials		<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Ms.			

GRAMMAR: The Verb Be



I'm Tony

Long form
(for formal writing)

Short form
(for speaking and
informal writing)

I	am	Tony.
---	----	-------

I'm	Tony.
-----	-------

The short form: what happens

I am

I am

I'm

I'm

"I" is a personal
pronoun.

"Am" is a form
of the verb be.

Pronoun and
verb together:

I

am

I am

I'm



I'm Tony.
I'm from Portugal.



I'm Ana.
I'm from Chile.

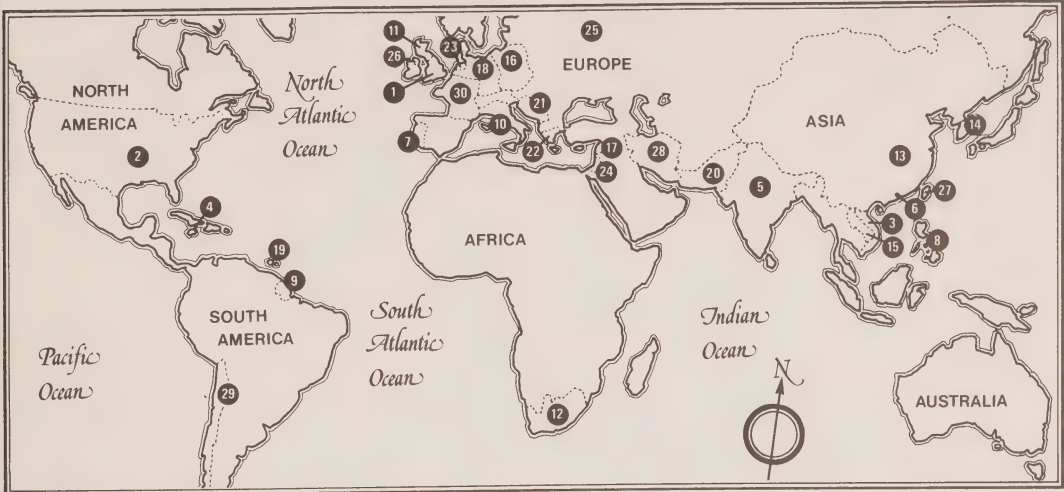
--

You

Tell about yourself.



EXTRA STUDY: Immigration to Ontario



People come to Ontario from many countries. The numbers on the map are the 30 places that most immigrants came from in the years 1977 to 1981. Below are the names of the places. Match the number to the name and put the number in the box. The lower the number, the higher the immigration. For example, 32,788 immigrants came from country number 1 (England), and 1,539 immigrants came from number 30 (France).

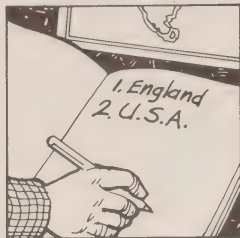
<input type="text" value="29"/>	Chile	<input type="text"/>	Israel	<input type="text"/>	Poland
<input type="text"/>	China	<input type="text"/>	Italy	<input type="text"/>	Portugal
<input type="text"/>	England	<input type="text"/>	Jamaica	<input type="text"/>	Scotland
<input type="text"/>	France	<input type="text"/>	Korea	<input type="text"/>	South Africa
<input type="text"/>	Germany	<input type="text"/>	Laos	<input type="text"/>	Soviet Union
<input type="text"/>	Greece	<input type="text"/>	Lebanon	<input type="text"/>	Taiwan
<input type="text"/>	Guyana	<input type="text"/>	Netherlands	<input type="text"/>	Trinidad-Tobago
<input type="text"/>	Hong Kong	<input type="text"/>	Northern Ireland	<input type="text"/>	United States
<input type="text"/>	India	<input type="text"/>	Pakistan	<input type="text"/>	Vietnam
<input type="text"/>	Iran	<input type="text"/>	Philippines	<input type="text"/>	Yugoslavia

The answers are on page 126.

Spelling Practice



Look at the map on page 7. Write each number in your notebook.



Beside each number, write the name of the country.



Look at the names on page 7. Correct your spelling.

Examples:

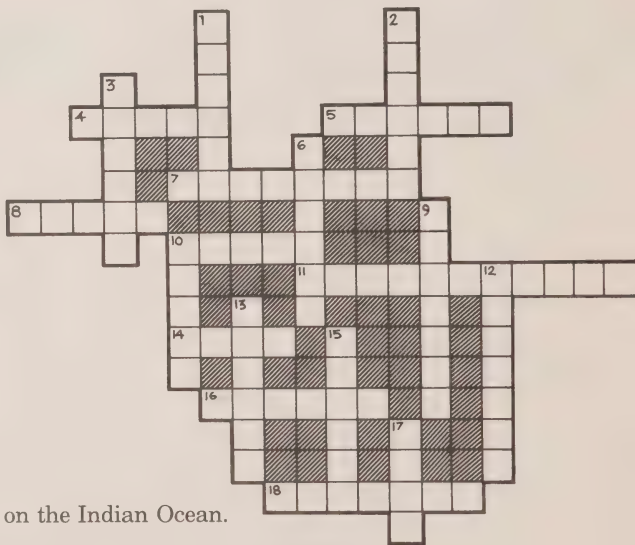
1. England
2. U.S.A.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Look on page 7, if necessary.

Down

1. Trinidad- ____
2. A country in the Middle East.
3. ____ States.
6. A country in South America.
9. Northern ____
10. Another country in South America.
12. A country on the Mediterranean Sea.
13. A country East of Germany.
15. A country in Europe famous for cuisine.
17. ____ Kong.



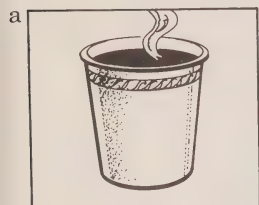
Across

4. A country on the Indian Ocean.
5. United ____
7. A country on the Atlantic Ocean, west of Spain.
8. A country near Japan.
10. A large country in Asia.
11. A country in Europe on the North Sea.
14. A country in Asia between Thailand and Vietnam.
16. A country near Hong Kong.
18. A country on the South China Sea.

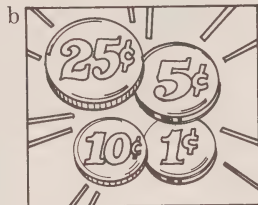
The answers are on page 126.

UNIT 2: GETTING CHANGE

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



coffee



change

CONVERSATION: Ana Asks for Change



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



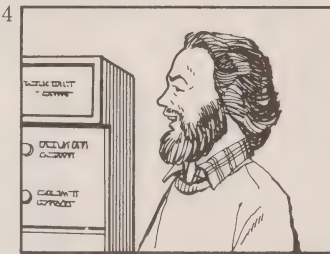
Do you have change?



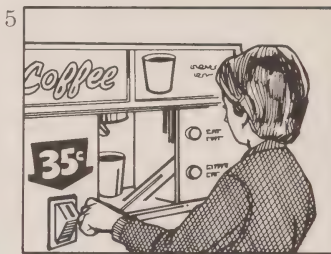
Yes. Here.



Thank you.



You're welcome.










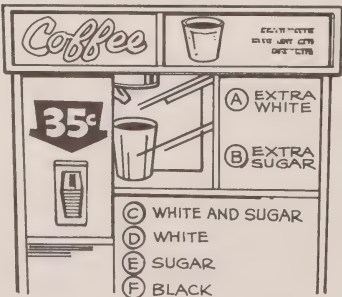
Other Sentences You May Hear








- Picture 1: Can you give me change?
Can you give me change for a dollar?
Can you change a dollar?
Picture 2: Yes. Here you are.
Picture 3: Thanks. (INFORMAL)

READING: Coffee Machine

Which buttons do you press on the coffee machine?
Match the word(s) to the picture and put the letter in the box.

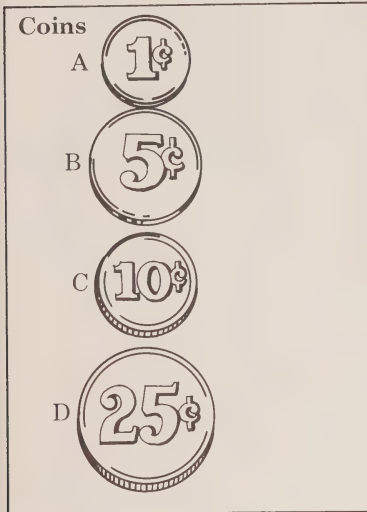
- 1 C  +  + 
- 2  + 
- 3  + 



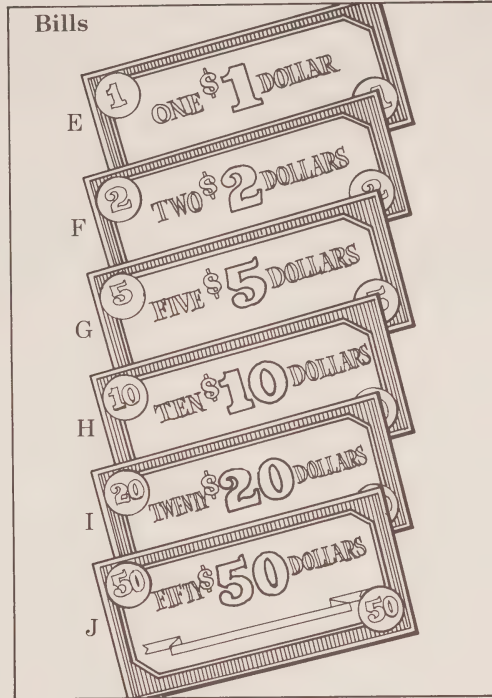
- 4  +  + 
- 5 
- 6  +  + 

The answers are on page 126.

VOCABULARY: Coins and Bills



- A. a cent or a penny
B. a nickel
C. a dime
D. a quarter
E. a dollar bill
F. a two-dollar bill
G. a five-dollar bill
H. a ten-dollar bill
I. a twenty-dollar bill
J. a fifty-dollar bill



COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Getting Change

Ask other people in the class for change. You can say:
Do you have change for (a dollar)?

The other person answers:

Yes. Here. or **No. I'm sorry. I don't.**

NUMBERS: Zero to One Hundred

A. Numbers Zero to Thirty-Nine

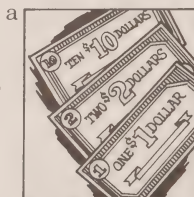
0 Zero	10 Ten	20 Twenty	30 Thirty
1 One	11 Eleven	21 Twenty-one	31 Thirty-one
2 Two	12 Twelve	22 Twenty-two	32 Thirty-two
3 Three	13 Thirteen	23 Twenty-three	33 Thirty-three
4 Four	14 Fourteen	24 Twenty-four	34 Thirty-four
5 Five	15 Fifteen	25 Twenty-five	35 Thirty-five
6 Six	16 Sixteen	26 Twenty-six	36 Thirty-six
7 Seven	17 Seventeen	27 Twenty-seven	37 Thirty-seven
8 Eight	18 Eighteen	28 Twenty-eight	38 Thirty-eight
9 Nine	19 Nineteen	29 Twenty-nine	39 Thirty-nine

B. Numbers Forty to One Hundred

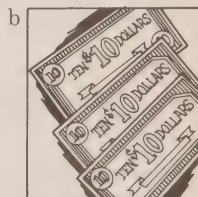
40 Forty	50 Fifty	60 Sixty	70 Seventy
80 Eighty	90 Ninety	100 One Hundred	

PRONUNCIATION

13 and 30 sound almost the same.
Listen. Which do you hear, a or b?
Write a or b.



\$13.00



\$30.00



1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

If you don't know whether someone is saying 13 or 30, ask:
Is that **one three** or **three zero**?

GRAMMAR: Questions with Do

1. Ana is asking a question.



Do you have change?

2. This is how you make a question.

a. Take the words

you have change

b. Add the word do.



Do you have change ?

3. Make questions.



Do you have a quarter ?







The answers are on page 126.

EXTRA STUDY: Writing Cheques



Ana bought a book at Black's Bookstore for \$11.95. Here is the cheque she wrote.

THE BANK OF BELLEVILLE
109 WATER STREET

PAY TO THE ORDER OF

Feb 11 1984

Black's Bookstore

\$ 11.95

Eleven ⁹⁵/₁₀₀ DOLLARS

RE 16501

Ana Pinto

B You bought a book at Black's Bookstore for \$8.00. Complete this cheque.

THE BANK OF BELLEVILLE
109 WATER STREET

PAY TO THE ORDER OF

Feb 25 1984

\$

DOLLARS

RE 15942

Write these amounts

C \$18.95

Black's Bookstore

\$

DOLLARS

D \$22.00

Black's Bookstore

\$

DOLLARS

E \$42.50

Black's Bookstore


\$

DOLLARS


Check your spelling of the amounts on page 12.

UNIT 3: PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION


VOCABULARY: For the Conversation

a


(to) work

b


(to) work

c

Ana lives at
21 King St.
Betty lives at 23.

d

number

e

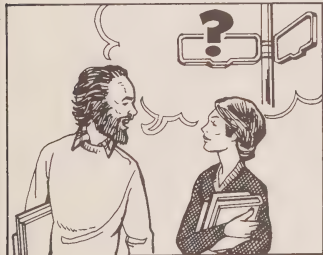
King Street

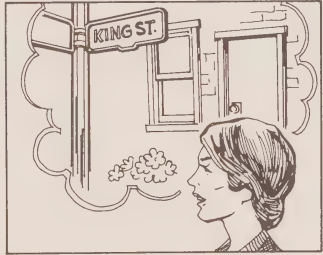
CONVERSATION: Walking Home


f


g


First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.


1

2

3

4

5

6

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Where do you live?



On King Street.



Really? I work on King Street.



What number?



Forty.



I live at number twenty-one.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: What street do you live on?

Picture 3: I have a job on King Street.

I'm working on King Street.

PRONUNCIATION

I. Walk and work sound almost the same.

Listen. Which do you hear, a or b ?



I walk
on King St.



I work
on King St.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

II. 14 and 40 sound almost the same.

Listen. Which do you hear, a or b ?



14 King Street



40 King Street

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

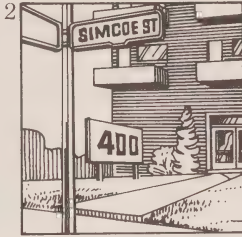
If people don't hear you, say each digit separately:

14 one four 40 four zero

READING AND WRITING: Addresses



Ana lives in a house at 21 King Street.



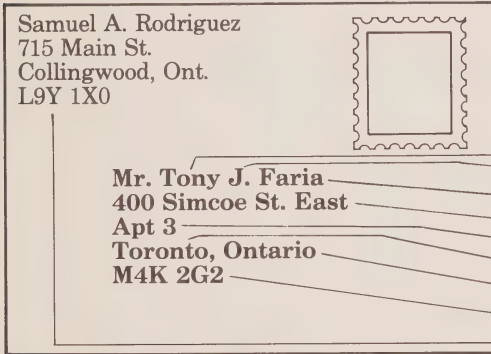
Tony lives in an apartment building at 400 Simcoe Street.



Tony's apartment number is 3.

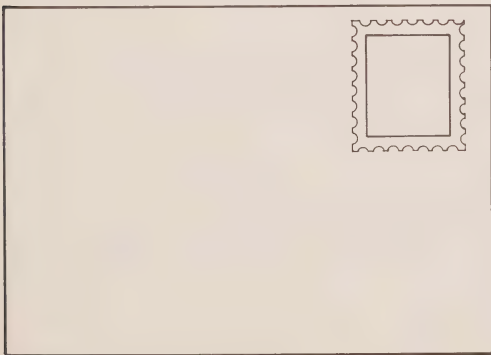
Where do you live, in a house or an apartment? _____

Tony received a letter from his friend Samuel. This is the envelope.



1. first name
2. initial
3. last name
4. street
5. apartment number
6. city or town
7. province
8. postal code
9. return address

You have written a letter to Tony. Write the envelope for it.
Use your own return address.



Tony filled out these forms.

A

PLEASE PRINT <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Ms.		
Tony	J.	Faria
First Name	Initial	Last Name
400	Simcoe St.E.	3
Number	Street	Apt. Number
Toronto		Ontario
City or Town		Province
		M4K 2G2
		Postal Code

B

PLEASE PRINT <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Ms.	
NAME	Tony J. Faria
ADDRESS	400 Simcoe St.E, Apt. 3
CITY AND PROVINCE	Toronto, Ontario
POSTAL CODE	M4K 2G2

Fill out these forms with information about yourself.

C

PLEASE PRINT <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Ms.		
First Name	Initial	Last Name
Number	Street	Apt. Number
City or Town		Province
		Postal Code

D

PLEASE PRINT <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Ms.	
NAME	
ADDRESS	
CITY AND PROVINCE	
POSTAL CODE	



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people their name and where they live. You can say:

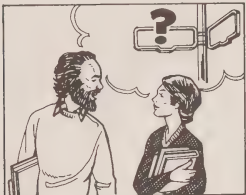
What's your name? Where do you live, in a house or apartment?

Write each name here and check (✓) house or apartment.

Name	House	Apartment	Name	House	Apartment
Ana	✓				
Tony		✓			

GRAMMAR: Questions with Where

1. Tony is asking a question.



Where do you live?

2. There are two kinds of questions.

Yes or no questions:	Do you have change?	Do you work on King St.?	Answers: Yes <u>or</u> No
Question-word questions: <u>Where</u>	<u>do</u> you <u>live</u> ?	<u>do</u> you <u>work</u> ?	Answers: <u>on Simcoe St.</u> <u>on King St.</u>

3. Make question-word questions.



Where do you live ?



Where do you work ?





Make statements.



I live on King Street.







The answers are on page 126.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Look in the dictionary, if necessary.

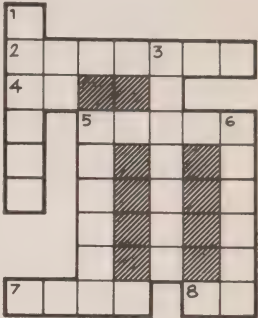
Down

- 1. The name of this country.
- 3. The language you are learning.
- 5. The number after ten.
- 6. The number after eleven.

Across

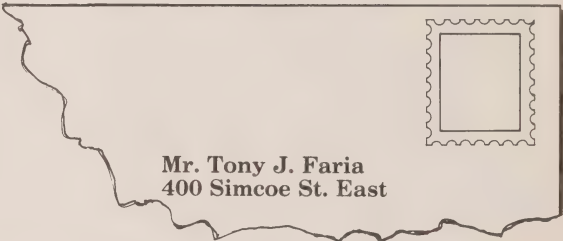
- 2. The number and name of your street is your ____.
- 4. The opposite of "yes."
- 5. The number before nine.
- 7. The number before ten.
- 8. "She" is a feminine pronoun.
____ is a masculine pronoun.

The answers are on page 126.



EXTRA STUDY: Kinds of Streets and Abbreviations

Tony lives on Simcoe Street. "St." is the abbreviation for "Street." We use the abbreviation when we write an address.



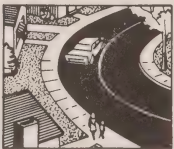
Here are kinds of streets.



A. Street
or
B. Road



C. Avenue
or
D. Boulevard



E. Crescent



F. Court
or
G. Square

Here are the abbreviations. Match the kind of street to the abbreviation.

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Blvd. | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> St. | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> Rd. |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Sq. | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Ave. | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Cres. |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Crt. | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> R.R. | |



H. Rural Route

UNIT 4: INTRODUCTION OF OTHERS

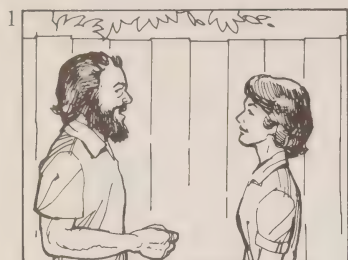
CONVERSATION: Ana Meets Lou



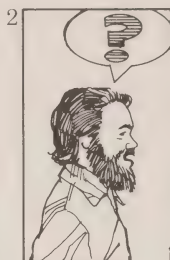
First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Hello Ana.



How are you?



Fine thanks.



How are you?



Fine.



This is Lou.



Lou, this is Ana.



Nice to meet you.



Oh.



I'm sorry.



That's okay.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 7: Lou, I'd like you to meet Ana.

Picture 8: Glad to meet you.

Pleased to meet you.

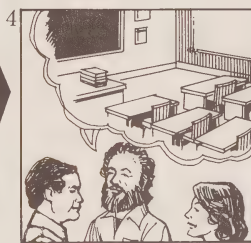
Hi. (INFORMAL)

Hello.

Picture 11: That's all right.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES: Introducing Others

Make two conversations.



- 1. This is Lou.
- 2. Lou, this is Ana.
- 3. She's from Chile.
- 4. She's in my class.
- 5. Nice to meet you.

Here is one conversation from the Extension.

Tony: 1. This is Lou.
2. Lou this is Ana.
3. She's from Chile.
Ana: 5. Nice to meet you.

Look at the Extension and write another conversation in your notebook.
The second conversation is on page 126.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Photos From Home

Bring a photograph of someone to class. Tell who that person is and say one thing about him or her, for example:
This is my friend. This is Albert Einstein.
She's from Laos. He's a famous scientist.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Social Insurance Number



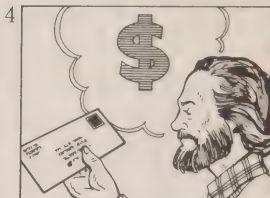
Tony has a social insurance card.



His social insurance number (SIN) is on the card.



He needs the number to work.



He needs the number for unemployment insurance.



Lou has a social insurance number, too.

READING AND WRITING:
Application for a Social Insurance Number

Lou got his application for a social insurance card at a Canada Employment Centre. Here is part of the form.

1	FIRST NAME Hsi An (Lou)			MIDDLE NAME			PRESENT FAMILY NAME (SURNAME) Wong								
2	DATE OF BIRTH	DAY 3	MONTH 8	YEAR 44	DO NOT WRITE HERE			3	4	SEX	MALE <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	FEMALE <input type="checkbox"/>			
5	PLACE OF BIRTH Canton, China			6	SURNAME AT BIRTH Wong			7							
8	FATHER'S FIRST NAME Wu Liu			9	HAVE YOU EVER BEFORE APPLIED FOR OR RECEIVED A SOCIAL INSURANCE NUMBER			YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10	IF "YES" WRITE YOUR NUMBER HERE				
11	DATE 2/4/75			12	MARITAL STATUS			SINGLE <input type="checkbox"/>	MARRIED <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>	13	STATUS IN CANADA			
													CANADIAN CITIZEN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PERMANENT RESIDENT <input type="checkbox"/>	OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>
14	APPLICANT'S WRITTEN SIGNATURE Lou Wong														

Fill this out with information about yourself.

1	FIRST NAME			MIDDLE NAME			PRESENT FAMILY NAME (SURNAME)								
2	DATE OF BIRTH	DAY	MONTH	YEAR	DO NOT WRITE HERE			3	4	SEX	MALE <input type="checkbox"/>	FEMALE <input type="checkbox"/>			
5	PLACE OF BIRTH			6	SURNAME AT BIRTH			7							
8	FATHER'S FIRST NAME			9	HAVE YOU EVER BEFORE APPLIED FOR OR RECEIVED A SOCIAL INSURANCE NUMBER			YES <input type="checkbox"/>	NO <input type="checkbox"/>	10	IF "YES" WRITE YOUR NUMBER HERE				
11	DATE			12	MARITAL STATUS			SINGLE <input type="checkbox"/>	MARRIED <input type="checkbox"/>	OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>	13	STATUS IN CANADA			
													CANADIAN CITIZEN <input type="checkbox"/>	PERMANENT RESIDENT <input type="checkbox"/>	OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>
14	APPLICANT'S WRITTEN SIGNATURE														

GRAMMAR: The Verb Be



Long form
(for formal writing)

She is from Chile.

Short form
(for speaking and
informal writing)

She's from Chile.

She's from Chile.

2 The short form: what happens

She is

She 's

She's

She's

3 She and he are personal pronouns.



Is is a form of
the verb be.

is

Pronoun
and verb together:

She is

She's

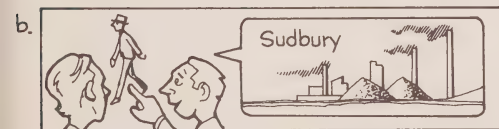
He is

He's

4 Make sentences.



She's from Chile.



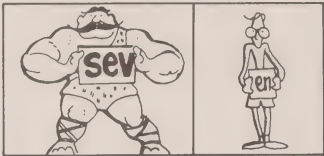
The answers are on page 126.

PRONUNCIATION

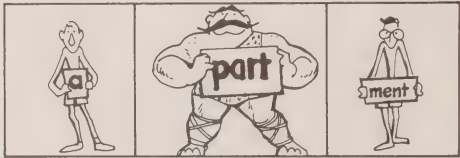
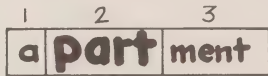
1. Look at this word. It has two parts. The parts are called syllables.



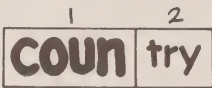
2. The first part or syllable is strong. We say it louder.



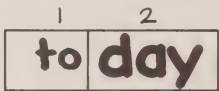
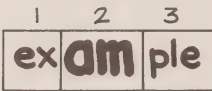
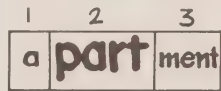
3. Look at this word. It has three syllables. The second syllable is strong. We say it louder.



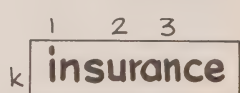
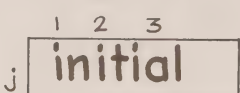
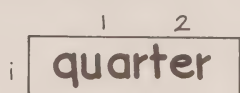
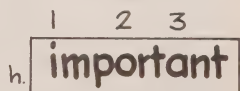
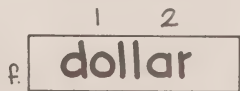
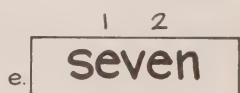
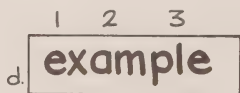
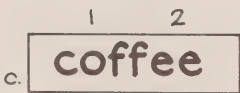
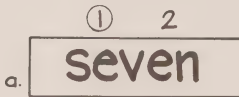
4. The first syllable of these words is strong:



5. The second syllable of these words is strong:



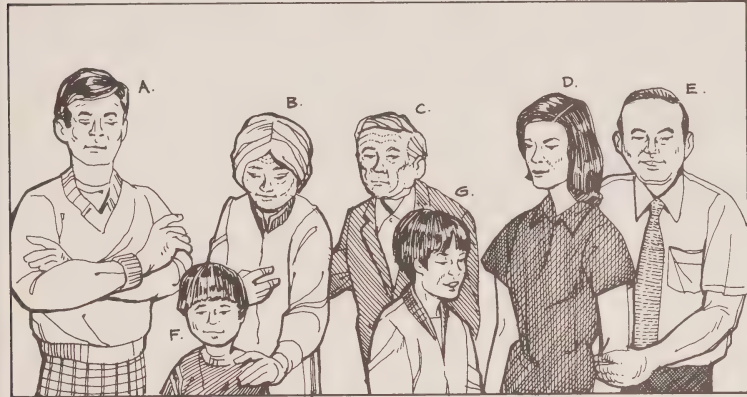
6. Listen to these words. Circle the number of the strong syllable.



The answers are on page 126.

EXTRA STUDY: The Family

This is Lou's family.



1. I'm Lou.



- A is my brother.
- B is my mother.
- C is my father.
- D is my wife.
- F is my son.
- G is my son.

2. I'm Lou's brother.



- G is my nephew.
- F is my nephew.
- D is my sister-in-law.

Complete these sentences.

3. I'm Lou's son.



- A is my uncle
- B is my _____
- C is my _____
- D is my _____
- E is my _____
- G is my _____

- grandfather
- mother
- father
- grandmother
- uncle
- brother

4. I'm Lou's mother.

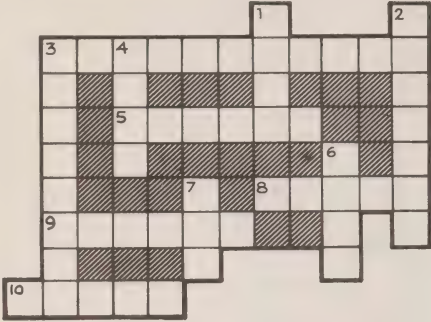


- A is my _____
- C is my _____
- D is my _____
- F is my _____
- G is my _____

- daughter-in-law
- husband
- son
- grandson
- grandson

The answers are on page 127.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle



Down

- 1. My ___ is Ana.
- 2. This person (male) has the same mother and father as you.
- 3. Son of your son or daughter.
- 4. Sister of your mother or father.
- 6. Nice to ___ you.
- 7. The number after nine.

Across

- 3. Father of your father or mother.
- 5. Son of your brother or sister.
- 8. Daughter of your brother or sister.
- 9. This person (female) has the same mother and father as you.
- 10. Brother of your mother or father.

The answers are on page 127.

EXTRA STUDY: Two-line Dialogues

Complete each dialogue.

- 1 I'm Ana.
 Nice to meet you.
- 2 Where are you from?
- 3 Do you have change for a dollar?
- 4 Where do you live?
- 5 How are you?
- 6 Your address please?
- 7 Your telephone number?

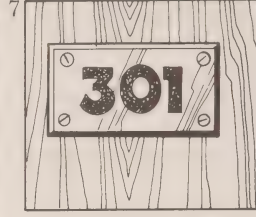
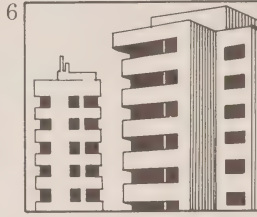
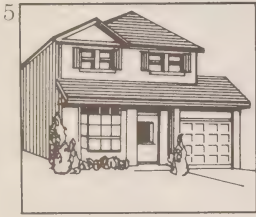
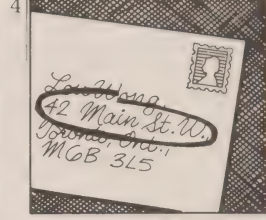
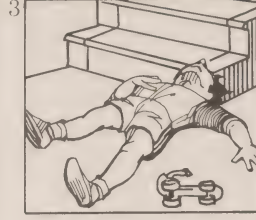
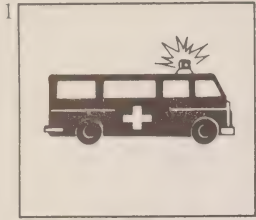
Choose from these sentences.

- A. Yes. Here.
- B. Chile.
- C. Fine thanks.
- D. Nice to meet you.
- E. On King St.
- F. 751-2632.
- G. 42 Main St. West.

The answers are on page 127.

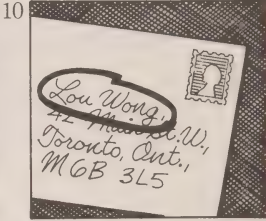
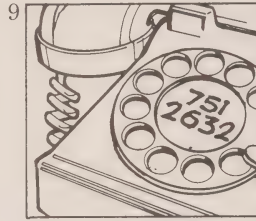
UNIT 5: EMERGENCIES

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation

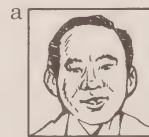


1. ambulance
2. boy
3. hurt
4. address
5. house

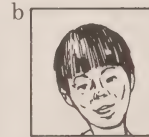
6. apartment
7. number
8. apartment number
9. telephone number
10. name



CONVERSATION: Lou Calls Emergency



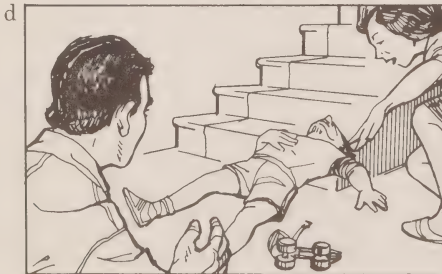
Lou



Ken



Su Ping



CONVERSATION

First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Emergency.



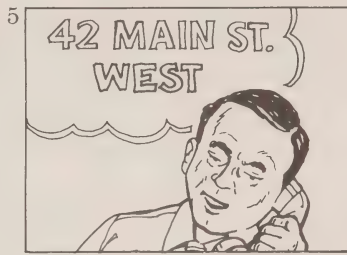
Ambulance, please.



My boy is hurt.



Your address please?



42 Main Street West.



House or apartment?



Apartment, number 301.



Your telephone number?



751-2632.



And your name?



Lou Wong.



Fine.

Other Questions Policeman May Ask

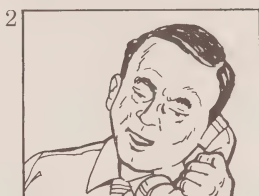
What language do you speak? What's the nearest major intersection? What municipality is that?

SPELLING

Can you spell your name and your street name in English?
This is important.



Please spell your address.

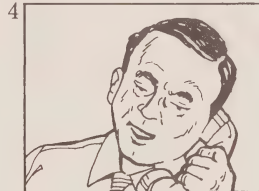


M-A-I-N.

Some alphabet letters are difficult to hear. We use familiar words to help people hear the correct letter.



Please spell it again.



M for Monday -A-I-N.

SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people in your class to spell their name and the name of their street. You can say:

Please spell your name.

Please spell the name of your street.

Write each name and the name of the street here. Then show it to the person. Is it correct?

Ana

King Street

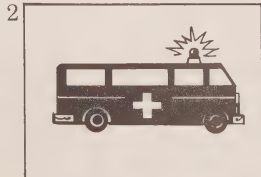
Continue in your notebook.

EMERGENCY TELEPHONE NUMBERS

Write the emergency numbers for your local area. They are in the front of your telephone book.



Fire Department



Ambulance



Police



Poison Information Centre

USEFUL INFORMATION: If Your Child Swallows Poison



Your child swallows poison.



If someone in your house speaks English,



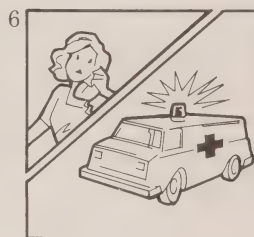
ask that person to call the Poison Information Centre.



That person will get important information.



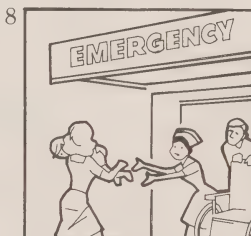
If no one in your house speaks English,



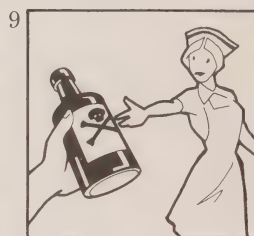
call an ambulance.



Take your child AND the poison container.



The ambulance will take you to the Emergency Department of the nearest hospital.



Show the poison container.

For more useful information, read "Newcomers Guide to Services in Ontario." This booklet is free and comes in different languages. It is published by the Ministry of Citizenship and Culture. For information or help, go to an immigrant aid agency. Look in your telephone directory under the name of your nationality, for example "Italian" or "Vietnamese."

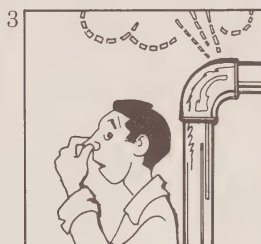
USEFUL INFORMATION: The Fire Department



You call the fire
department



if you have a fire



or a gas leak



or if someone is stuck.

PRONUNCIATION

Here are the names of streets you can find in some Ontario cities. Listen to each name and circle the number of the strong syllable.

a. ^{① 2} Hur on St.

b. ^{1 ② 3 4} On tar i o Ave.

c. ^{1 2 3} Mc Ken zie St.

d. ^{1 2} Sim coe St.

e. ^{1 2 3 4} Ni a ga ra Ave.

f. ^{1 2 3} Av e nue Rd.

g. ^{1 2 3 4} Vic tor i a Ave.

h. ^{1 2 3 4} E liz a beth St.

i. ^{1 2} Riv er St.

j. ^{1 2 3} Mac Don ald St.

k. ^{1 2} Col lege St.

The answers are on page 127.

Write the name of the street you live on. _____

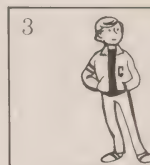
Write the name of the street your school is on. _____

Write the name of two or three streets you use when you come to
school. _____

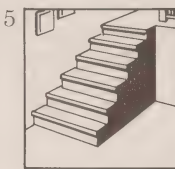
In each street name, show the strongest syllable. Ask your teacher
to help you.

UNIT 6: SAYING HOW YOU FEEL

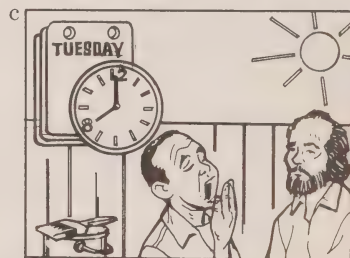
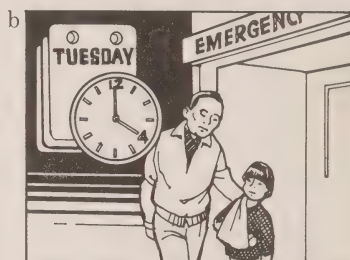
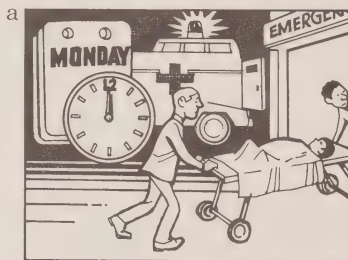
VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



1. tired
2. hospital
3. big
4. little
5. stairs
6. fall down
7. fine



CONVERSATION: Lou is Tired



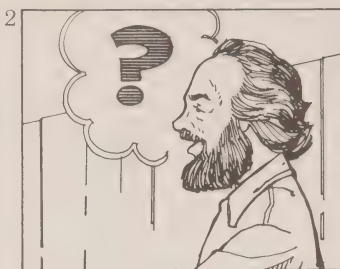
First, look at ALL the pictures.
Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



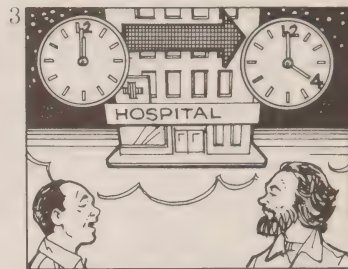
WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



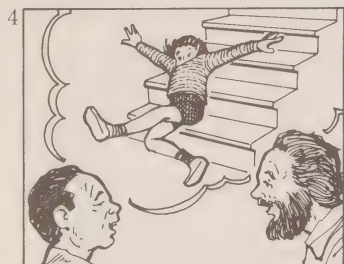
I'm tired.



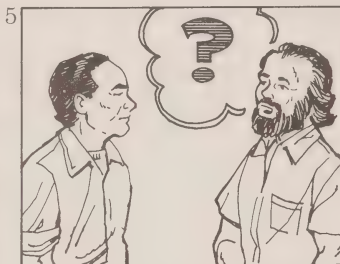
Oh! Why?



I was at the hospital until four.



My little boy fell down the stairs.



How is he now?



He's fine.



That's good.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 2: Oh! How come? (INFORMAL)

Picture 5: How's he doing now?

Picture 7: I'm glad.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES

Make two conversations.



1. How's your little boy?

2. He's fine.

4. That's good.

3. He's still in the hospital.

5. That's too bad.

Here is one conversation from the Extension.

Tony: 1. How's your little boy?

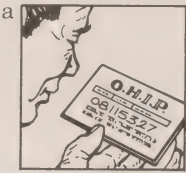
Lou: 2. He's fine.

Tony: 4. That's good.

Look at the Extension and write the other conversation in your notebook.

The second conversation is on page 127.

READING AND WRITING: Ontario Health Insurance Plan



Lou has an OHIP card. It has a number on it.



At the hospital Lou gave this number.



OHIP helps pay the hospital and doctor bills.



OHIP doesn't pay for dental care, except in hospitals.

Lou filled out an application for OHIP. Here are parts of the form.

1 Surname (family name) Please print		Initials		<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mr <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs <input type="checkbox"/> Ms	
Street address		Insert the name by which you are known e.g. Tom, Vera, etc.			
42 MAINT ST W		LOU			
Apt. no. Name of City/Town, etc.		Telephone Number - 751-2632			
3011 TORONTO					
Province Postal code		Date of Birth Day Month Year			
ONTARIO M3Q4M4		3 8 44			
Name of present employer		Marital status <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed			
SELF-EMPLOYED		<input type="checkbox"/> Single <input type="checkbox"/> Separated <input type="checkbox"/> Other			
Insurable status <input type="checkbox"/> Single premium I have no eligible dependent(s). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Family premium I have eligible dependent(s)					
2 (Dependents are not covered if not residing in Ontario, except as indicated in part 2 on the reverse side of the application)					

Fill this out with information about yourself.

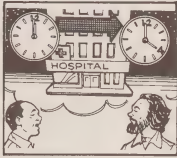
1 Surname (family name) Please print		Initials		<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Ms.	
Street address		Insert the name by which you are known e.g. Tom, Vera, etc.			
Apt. no. Name of City/Town, etc.		Telephone Number -			
Province Postal code		Date of Birth Day Month Year			
Name of present employer		Marital status <input type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed			
Previous OHIP no. (if any)		<input type="checkbox"/> Single <input type="checkbox"/> Separated <input type="checkbox"/> Other			
Insurable status <input type="checkbox"/> Single premium I have no eligible dependent(s). <input type="checkbox"/> Family premium I have eligible dependent(s)					
2 (Dependents are not covered if not residing in Ontario, except as indicated in part 2 on the reverse side of the application)					

Have you applied for OHIP yet? There is usually a three-month waiting period after you apply. You may receive help to pay your premiums if you do not have enough money.

GRAMMAR: Past Form of the Verb Be



I'm at work now.



I was at the hospital until four last night.

2 **Was** is a past form of the verb **Be**. It is used with the pronouns: **I, He, She**.



He was at the hospital last night.



She was at the hospital last night.



Lou was at the hospital last night.

3 Make sentences with **Was**.



He was at the hospital last night.









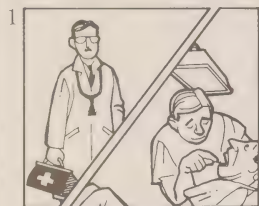


Tell about yourself.

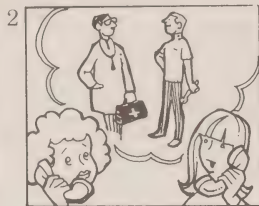
I last night.

The answers are on page 127.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Finding a Doctor or Dentist



Do you need a doctor or dentist?



It's best to ask your friends for the name of a good one.



If your friends can't help you, here are other things you can do.



The College of Family Physicians has names of family doctors.



They will tell you what languages each doctor speaks.



You can also see a doctor in an out-patients clinic at a hospital.



The Ontario Dental Association has names of dentists near your home.



If a doctor or dentist suggests treatment



that you are not sure about, ask questions.



You can also go to another doctor or dentist



and get another opinion.



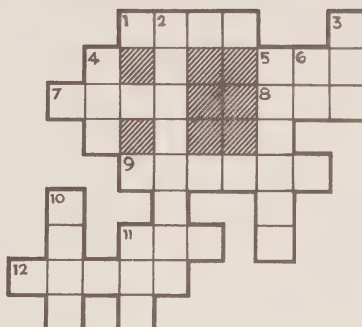
In a medical or dental emergency, go to a hospital.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Look in the dictionary if necessary.

Down

2. A place for sick people.
3. A male child.
4. "He" is a masculine pronoun.
— is a feminine pronoun.
5. The number after eleven.
6. A word to show surprise.
10. A word meaning "okay."
11. The opposite of "little."



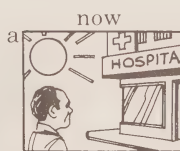
Across

1. The opposite of "this."
5. That's ___ bad.
7. The opposite of "that."
8. A question word meaning "What's the reason?"
9. The opposite of "big."
11. The opposite of "good."
12. "Till" is the short form of ___.

The answers are on page 127.

PRONUNCIATION

Is and **was** sometimes sound almost the same. Listen. Which do you hear, a or b? Write a or b.



He's at the hospital.



He was at the hospital.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

BINGO GAME

- a. Choose 24 items from the list below. Write one item, in pencil, into each box on the Bingo card. Do this in random order.
- b. Listen. When you hear an item, put a check mark in pencil beside it or cover it with a marker.
- c. When you have a row of items checked — either vertical, horizontal or diagonal, call out “Bingo” in a loud voice.


\$14.00
\$40.00
\$ 1.15
\$ 1.50
Queen St.
Main St.
walk
work
first name
last name

She’s at school.
She was at school.
How is he?
How was he?
East
West
He’s from Chile.
She’s from Chile.
He’s Tony.
He is Tony.


1403 Main St.
1413 Main St.
17 King St.
70 King St.
\$16.60
\$60.16
She’s fine.
She’s five.

UNIT 7: TELLING THE TIME


CONVERSATION: Lou Asks for the Time

a


time

b

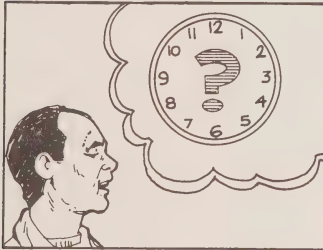
watch

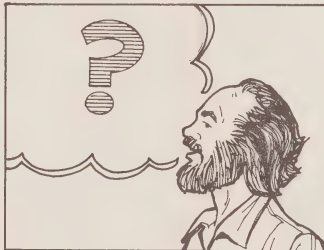
c


lunch

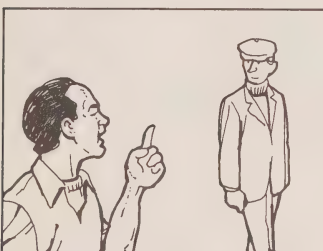
d


First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.

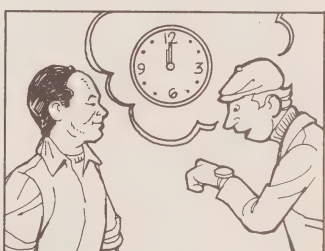
1


2


3


4

5

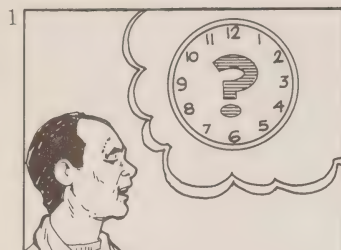
6

7

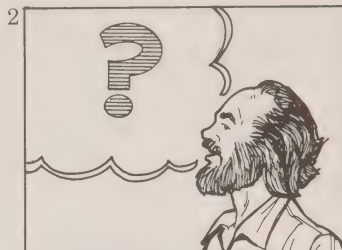
8

9

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



What time is it?



I don't know.



I don't have my watch.



Excuse me.



Do you have the time?



It's twelve o'clock.



Thank you.



It's twelve o'clock.



Time for lunch.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: What's the time?

What time do you have?

Picture 5: Could you tell me the time, please? (MORE FORMAL)

CLOCK TIMES AROUND THE WORLD

Look at the clocks below. The time on each clock is ahead of the time on the Ottawa clock. For example, the time in Rome, Italy is 6 hours ahead of the time in Ottawa. The time in Seoul, Korea is 14 hours ahead of the time in Ottawa.

What time is it? Complete each sentence.

1.
A

It's one o'clock in
Ottawa, Canada.

B



It's ... in Rome,
Italy.

C



It's ... in
London,
England.

D



It's ... in Lisbon,
Portugal.

2.
A

It's eight-thirty
in Ottawa,
Canada.

B



It's ... in Athens,
Greece.

C



It's ... in Seoul,
Korea.

D



It's ... in
Warsaw, Poland.

3.
A

It's ten to nine in
Ottawa,
Canada.

B



It's ... in
Belgrade,
Yugoslavia.

C



It's ... in
Jerusalem,
Israel.

D



It's ... in
Islamabad,
Pakistan.

4.
A

It's twenty after
four in Ottawa,
Canada.

B



It's ... in Beirut,
Lebanon.

C



It's ... in Rome,
Italy.

D



It's ... in
London,
England.

5.
A

It's a quarter to
five in Ottawa,
Canada.

B



It's ... in
Lisbon,
Portugal.

C



It's ... in
Athens, Greece.

D



It's ... in Seoul,
Korea.

TELLING TIME

Practise telling the time.



eight o'clock



two minutes after eight



five after eight



ten after eight



a quarter after eight



twenty after eight



twenty-five after eight



eight-thirty
or
half past eight



twenty-five to nine



twenty to nine



a quarter to nine



fourteen minutes to nine



ten to nine



five to nine

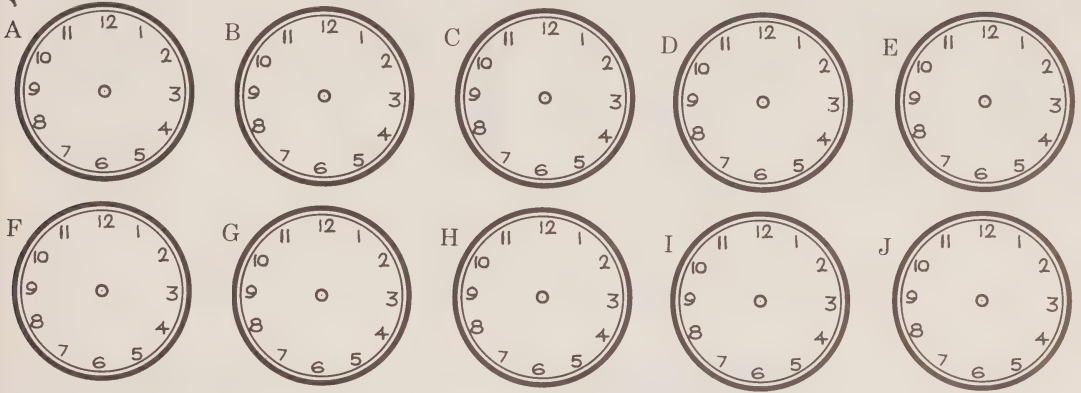


three minutes to nine



nine o'clock

What time is it? Listen. Draw the hands to show the time.



Digital Clocks

Sometimes people tell the time this way.

K		five o'clock	L		five-o-five	M		five-fifteen
N		five-thirty	O		five forty-five	P		five fifty-two

PRONUNCIATION

Listen to the teacher. Circle what you hear, a or b.

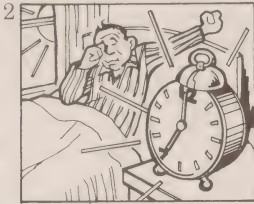
- | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| 1.a. 9:40
b. 9:14 | 4.a. 2:40
b. 2:14 | 7.a. It's 7:30.
b. It's 7:13. | 10.a. The time is 11:30.
b. The time is 11:13. |
| 2.a. 9:40
b. 9:14 | 5.a. 2:40
b. 2:14 | 8.a. It's 7:30.
b. It's 7:13. | 11.a. The time is 11:30.
b. The time is 11:13. |
| 3.a. 9:40
b. 9:14 | 6.a. 2:40
b. 2:14 | 9.a. It's 7:30.
b. It's 7:13. | 12.a. The time is 11:30.
b. The time is 11:13. |

THE TIME OF DAY: Morning, Afternoon and Evening

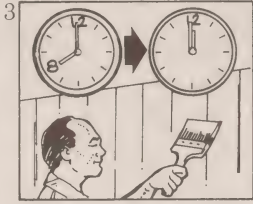
Read this section and answer the questions.



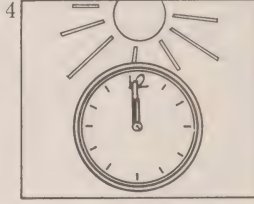
It's morning.



Lou wakes up at seven a.m. What time do you wake up?



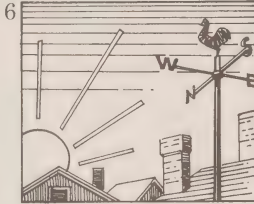
Lou works from 8-12. What do you do in the morning?



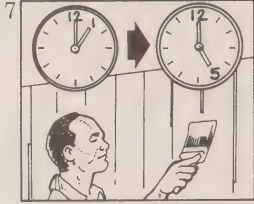
It's 12 noon.



Lou eats lunch at noon. What time do you eat lunch?



It's afternoon.



Lou works in the afternoon from one to five.



It's evening.



Sometimes Lou reads or watches television.



Sometimes he visits friends. What do you do in the evening?



It's 12:00 midnight.



Lou goes to bed around midnight. What time do you go to bed?



GRAMMAR: Negative Sentences with Don't



Long form

I	do	not	know.
---	----	-----	-------

Short form

I	don't	know.
---	-------	-------

I don't know.
I don't have
my watch.

2 The short form: what happens

do not	do not	do n't	don't	=	don't
--------	-------------------	--------	-------	---	-------

3 These are **AFFIRMATIVE** sentences.

I know.
I have a watch.
I live on King St.

These are **NEGATIVE** sentences.



I don't know.
I don't have a watch.
I don't live on King St.

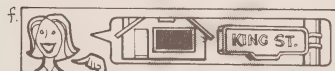
4 Make sentences.



I have a watch.



I don't have a watch.



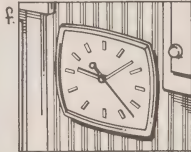
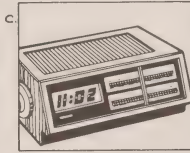
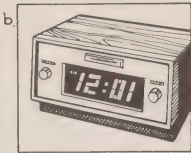
The answers are on page 127.

EXTRA STUDY: Personal Journal

Copy and complete this personal journal to show your typical Saturday.

On Saturday I usually wake up at _____. In the morning I _____. Then I eat lunch at _____. In the afternoon I usually _____. I eat supper at _____. In the evening I usually _____.

EXTRA STUDY: Kinds of Clocks



Match the picture to the word and put the letter in the box.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 <input type="text" value="e"/> alarm clock | 5 <input type="text"/> clock radio |
| 2 <input type="text"/> digital clock | 6 <input type="text"/> wall clock |
| 3 <input type="text"/> digital watch | 7 <input type="text"/> cuckoo clock |
| 4 <input type="text"/> pocket watch | 8 <input type="text"/> grandfather clock |

The answers are on page 127

Say each word. The syllable written in dark letters is the strong syllable.

alarm **digital** **pocket** **radio** **cuckoo** **grandfather**

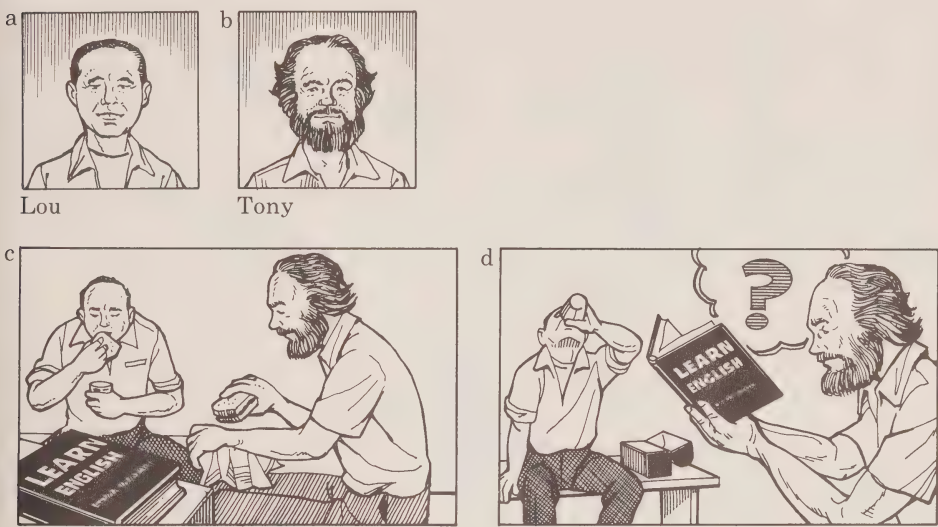


Take a partner. You can ask and answer these questions.

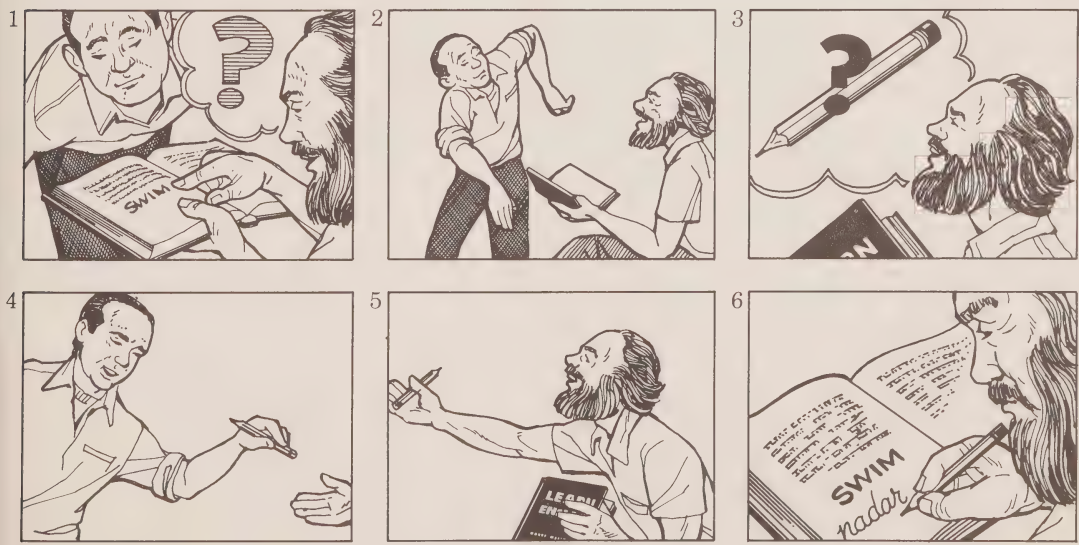
Do you have	{ an alarm clock? a digital clock? a digital watch? etc.	Where was it made? or What country was it made in?
-------------	---	--

UNIT 8: GETTING HELP WITH ENGLISH

CONVERSATION: Tony Asks Lou for Help



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



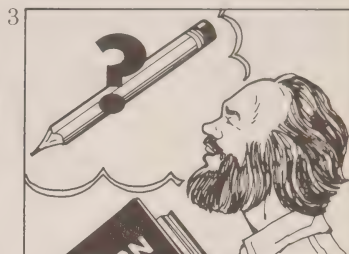
WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



What does this word mean?



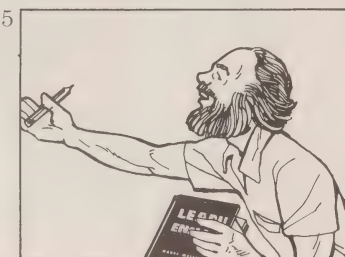
Oh, I understand.



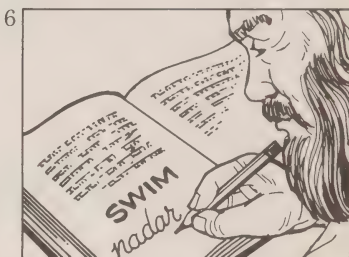
Do you have a pencil?



Yes. Here.



Thanks.



Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: I don't understand this word.

Picture 2: Oh, I see.

Picture 3: Do you have a pencil I could borrow? (MORE FORMAL)

Could you please lend me a pencil? (MORE FORMAL)

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES: Getting Help with English

Make four conversations.

1. What's your address?

2. 42 Main Street West.

3. Pardon?

4. Please repeat that.

5. Please speak louder.

6. Please speak slowly.

7. 42 Main Street West.

8. 42 MAIN STREET WEST.

9. 42 Main Street West.

PRONUNCIATION: Review of Alphabet Letters

- 1. These letters rhyme: A J K
- 2. These letters rhyme: B C D E G P T V
- 3. These letters start with the same sound: F L M N S X
- 4. These letters rhyme: I Y
- 5. These letters rhyme: Q U W
- 6. These letters don't rhyme: H O R Z



Take a partner. One of you says a letter. The other one points to it.



Listen. Circle the letter or letters you hear.
In numbers 13-30, watch your teacher's mouth.

1. a e	7. i e	13. m n	19. f s	25. v b
2. a e	8. i e	14. m n	20. f s	26. v b
3. a e	9. i e	15. m n	21. f s	27. v b
4. ae ea	10. ie ei	16. mn nm	22. fs sf	28. vb bv
5. ae ea	11. ie ei	17. mn nm	23. fs sf	29. vb bv
6. ae ea	12. ie ei	18. mn nm	24. fs sf	30. vb bv

SPEAKING ACTIVITY: Asking for Help with the Alphabet


Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

Each word below has one letter which is difficult to read. Point to that letter and say:

What's this letter?

Print the word.

1. *work*  work
2. *tired* _____
3. *twelve* _____
4. *Chile* _____
5. *Ontario* _____
6. *Toronto* _____
7. *sixteen* _____
8. *forty* _____
9. *Quebec* _____

B. 

Look at your partner's difficult letter. Find that letter here. Your partner doesn't look here. Tell your partner the name of the letter.

1. *work* 
2. *tired* 
3. *twelve* 
4. *Chile* 
5. *Ontario* 
6. *Toronto* 
7. *sixteen* 
8. *forty* 
9. *Quebec* 

Unfold this page. Check to see that you printed the correct letters. Then switch with your partner.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: The Parts of the Body

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

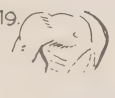
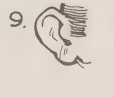
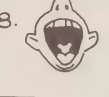
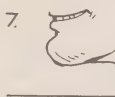
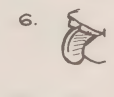
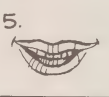
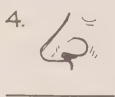
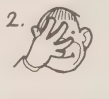
You want to know the names of the parts of the body. Look at each picture here; point to that part of your own body and ask your partner for the name. You can say:

What's this called?

and

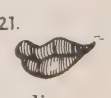
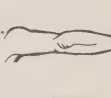
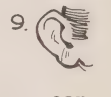
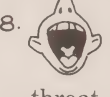
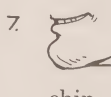
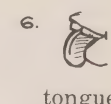
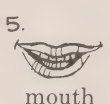
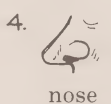
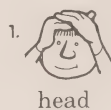
Please spell it.

Write each name under the picture.



B. 

When your partner points to a part of the body, look at the picture here and answer your partner with the name.



Unfold this page. Check your spelling. Then switch with your partner.

Asking for Help with Pronunciation

Some of the words on page 58 are difficult to pronounce, for example:
shoulder, Number 10 mouth, Number 5 chest, Number 19

Ask the teacher to help you with the pronunciation. Give the teacher the picture number of the word that is difficult for you. You can say:
Please pronounce (Number 10). or **How do you say (Number 10)?**
or **How do you pronounce (Number 10)?**

PRONUNCIATION

Here are some words from this unit. Listen to each word and circle the number of the strong syllable.

a. 1 2 ③
understand

b. ① 2
pencil

c. 1 2
pardon

d. 1 2
repeat

e. 1 2
louder

f. 1 2
slowly

g. 1 2
letter

h. 1 2
pronounce

i. 1 2
shoulder

j. 1 2
finger

k. 1 2
stomach

The answers are on page 127.

SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.



Choose a word from below. Say the word to your partner.

head	throat	leg
face	ear	foot
eye	neck	back
nose	shoulder	side
mouth	arm	chest
tongue	hand	stomach
chin	finger	



Respond to A's word with one of these sentences.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. What does that mean? | 6. Please repeat that. |
| 2. Pardon? | 7. Please say that again. |
| 3. Please speak louder. | 8. How do you spell that? |
| 4. Please spell that. | 9. I don't understand that word. |
| 5. Please write that. | |



Respond to B's sentence.

EXTRA STUDY: Languages of the World



The country that Ana comes from is Chile.
The language that she speaks is Spanish.

Here are some languages.


Afrikaans
English
Hebrew
Lao
Punjabi
Spanish

Arabic
French
Hindi
Persian
Russian
Tagalog

Chinese
German
Italian
Polish
Serbo-Croatian
Urdu

Dutch
Greek
Korean
Portuguese
Vietnamese

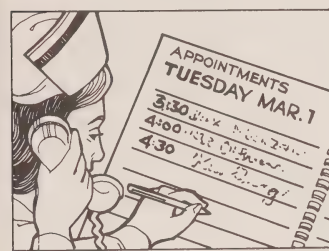
Here are countries from the map on page 7. Write a language that people speak in each country. Choose from the list above.

Country or Place	Language	Country or Place	Language
1. England	 English	16. Poland	_____
2. United States	_____	17. Lebanon	_____
3. Vietnam	_____	18. Germany	_____
4. Jamaica	_____	19. Trinidad-Tobago	_____
5. India	_____	20. Pakistan	_____
6. Hong Kong	_____	21. Yugoslavia	_____
7. Portugal	_____	22. Greece	_____
8. Philippines	_____	23. Netherlands	_____
9. Guyana	_____	24. Israel	_____
10. Italy	_____	25. Soviet Union	_____
11. Scotland	_____	26. Northern Ireland	_____
12. South Africa	_____	27. Taiwan	_____
13. China	_____	28. Iran	_____
14. Korea	_____	29. Chile	_____
15. Laos	_____	30. France	_____

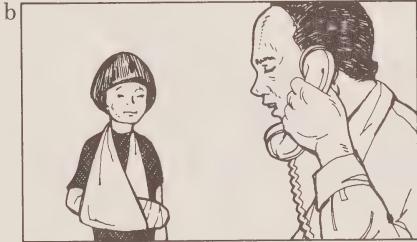
The answers are on page 128.

UNIT 9: TALKING ABOUT CALENDAR TIME

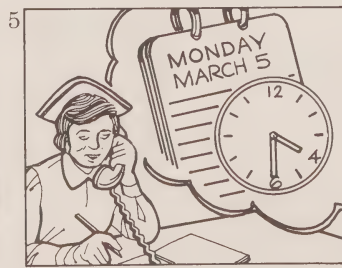
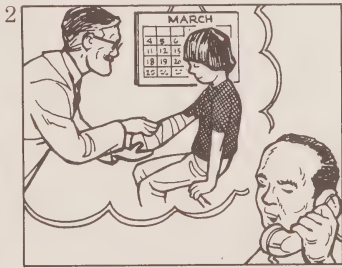
VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



CONVERSATION: A Doctor's Appointment for Ken



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



This is Lou Wong.

I'd like an appointment for
my little boy.

How about Thursday,
March the first at ten a.m.?

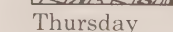
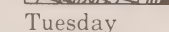
I work until four.

How about 4:30 on Monday
the fifth?

Okay. That's fine.

Picture 2: I'd like to have an appointment for my little boy.
make

Listen. Which do you hear, a or b? Write a or b.



1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____ 9. _____

VOCABULARY: The Calendar

A. Ordinal Numbers


First and **fifth** are ordinal numbers. When we say a calendar date we use an ordinal number.



How about Thursday, March the first at ten a.m.?

Match the ordinal number to the cardinal number.

Cardinal Numbers

- one  first
- two _____
- three _____
- four _____
- five _____
- six _____
- seven _____
- eight _____
- nine _____
- ten _____

Ordinal Numbers

- fifth
- third
- first
- sixth
- second
- fourth
- tenth
- ninth
- eighth
- seventh

B. Days of the Week

Say the long form.

- 1. Sunday
- 2. Monday
- 3. Tuesday
- 4. Wednesday
- 5. Thursday
- 6. Friday
- 7. Saturday

Match it with the short form.

- Tues.
- Sat.
- Sun.
- Thurs.
- Fri.
- Mon.
- Wed.

Jan.						
Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31				

C. Months of the Year.

On a cheque, you can write the short form or the long form.

Feb. or February

THE BANK OF BELLEVILLE		Feb. 11 19 84
109 WATER STREET		
PAY TO THE ORDER OF		

- Say the long form.
1. January
2. February
3. March
4. April
5. May
6. June
7. July
8. August
9. September
10. October
11. November
12. December



Look at the calendar.
Copy the short form.

Jan. _____

JAN.	FEB.	MAR.
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1 2 3
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	4 5 6 7 8 9 10
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	11 12 13 14 15 16 17
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	18 19 20 21 22 23 24
29 30 31	26 27 28 29	25 26 27 28 29 30 31
APRIL	MAY	JUNE
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4 5	1 2
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	6 7 8 9 10 11 12	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	13 14 15 16 17 18 19	10 11 12 13 14 15 16
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	20 21 22 23 24 25 26	17 18 19 20 21 22 23
29 30	27 28 29 30 31	24 25 26 27 28 29 30
JULY	AUG.	SEPT.
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
29 30 31	26 27 28 29 30 31	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
OCT.	NOV.	DEC.
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6	1 2 3	1
7 8 9 10 11 12 13	4 5 6 7 8 9 10	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
14 15 16 17 18 19 20	11 12 13 14 15 16 17	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
21 22 23 24 25 26 27	18 19 20 21 22 23 24	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
28 29 30 31	25 26 27 28 29 30	23 24 25 26 27 28 29

LISTENING ACTIVITY: Calendar Dates

Listen. Circle the date you hear.

JAN.	FEB.	MAR.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1 2 3
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	4 5 6 7 8 9 10
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	11 12 13 14 15 16 17
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	18 19 20 21 22 23 24
29 30 31	26 27 28 29	25 26 27 28 29 30 31
APRIL	MAY	JUNE
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4 5	1 2
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	6 7 8 9 10 11 12	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	13 14 15 16 17 18 19	10 11 12 13 14 15 16
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	20 21 22 23 24 25 26	17 18 19 20 21 22 23
29 30	27 28 29 30 31	24 25 26 27 28 29 30
JULY	AUG.	SEPT.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
29 30 31	26 27 28 29 30 31	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
OCT.	NOV.	DEC.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6	1 2 3	1
7 8 9 10 11 12 13	4 5 6 7 8 9 10	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
14 15 16 17 18 19 20	11 12 13 14 15 16 17	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
21 22 23 24 25 26 27	18 19 20 21 22 23 24	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
28 29 30 31	25 26 27 28 29 30	23 24 25 26 27 28 29


JAN.	FEB.	MAR.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1 2 3
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	4 5 6 7 8 9 10
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	11 12 13 14 15 16 17
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	18 19 20 21 22 23 24
29 30 31	26 27 28 29	25 26 27 28 29 30 31
APRIL	MAY	JUNE
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4 5	1 2
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	6 7 8 9 10 11 12	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	13 14 15 16 17 18 19	10 11 12 13 14 15 16
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	20 21 22 23 24 25 26	17 18 19 20 21 22 23
29 30	27 28 29 30 31	24 25 26 27 28 29 30
JULY	AUG.	SEPT.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
29 30 31	26 27 28 29 30 31	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
OCT.	NOV.	DEC.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6	1 2 3	1
7 8 9 10 11 12 13	4 5 6 7 8 9 10	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
14 15 16 17 18 19 20	11 12 13 14 15 16 17	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
21 22 23 24 25 26 27	18 19 20 21 22 23 24	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
28 29 30 31	25 26 27 28 29 30	23 24 25 26 27 28 29



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

- Ask some people these questions:
- A. What's your name? (Please spell it.)
 - B. When's your birthday?
 - C. When did you come to Canada?

Write the answers here:



A. NAME

Tony

B. BIRTHDAY

(Month) (Day)

June 6

C. DATE OF ARRIVAL IN CANADA

(Month) (Day) (Year)

Feb 7 1984

Continue in your notebook.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Calling for an Appointment

Caller:

Call and ask for an appointment.

Receptionist:

- 1. Give an appointment time.
- 2. Ask for the caller's name and telephone number.
- 3. Write the name and phone number in the appointment book.

THURSDAY, MARCH 1.			FRIDAY, MARCH 2.		
TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.	TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.
10:00			10:00		
10:30			10:30		
11:00			11:00		
11:30			11:30		
12:00			12:00		
12:30			12:30		
1:00			1:00		
1:30			1:30		
2:00			2:00		
2:30			2:30		
3:00			3:00		
3:30			3:30		
4:00			4:00		
4:30			4:30		

MONDAY, APRIL 2.			TUESDAY, APRIL 3.		
TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.	TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.
10:00			10:00		
10:30			10:30		
11:00			11:00		
11:30			11:30		
12:00			12:00		
12:30			12:30		
1:00			1:00		
1:30			1:30		
2:00			2:00		
2:30			2:30		
3:00			3:00		
3:30			3:30		
4:00			4:00		
4:30			4:30		

GRAMMAR: Verbs with s Added



I work until 4.

This is a statement with I.

I work until four.



This is a statement with He.
You add s to the verb work.

He works until four.

3 This is a statement with She.

She works until four.

4 This is a statement with Tony.

Tony works on King Street.

5 Make statements.



He works until five.



She lives on King Street.



She works until four-thirty.



The answers are on page 128.

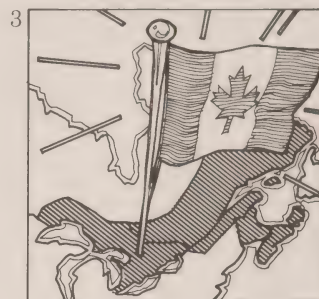
USEFUL INFORMATION: Holidays and Other Special Days



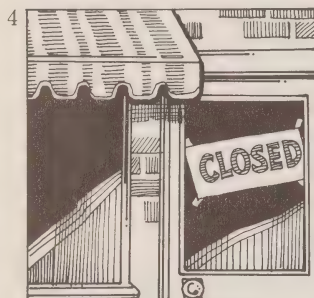
Canada Day is on July 1.



On July 1, in 1867, four separate provinces united.



Canada became a country.



Businesses are closed on July 1.



This is a national holiday.



In the evening there are fireworks in some of the public parks.

7. These are the national holidays:

New Year's Day, January 1
 Good Friday, in March or April
 Queen Victoria Day, May 24 or the Monday before
 Canada Day, July 1
 Labour Day, the first Monday in September
 Thanksgiving Day, the second Monday in October
 Christmas, December 25

8. This is a provincial holiday in Ontario. Not all businesses are closed:

Lord Simcoe Day, the first Monday in August

9. These are other special days in Canada:

Valentine's Day, February 14
 Easter Monday, in March or April
 Mother's Day, the second Sunday in May
 Father's Day, the third Sunday in June
 Hallowe'en, October 31
 Remembrance Day, November 11
 Boxing Day, December 26

EXTRA STUDY: More About Holidays and Other Special Days

Read silently. Look in the dictionary if necessary.

New Year's Day — January 1

This is a national holiday. The evening of December 31 is called "New Year's Eve." On New Year's Eve there are parties and other celebrations. Exactly at midnight everyone kisses and says "Happy New Year."



a party



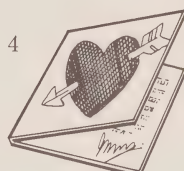
a kiss

Valentine's Day — February 14

The name comes from Saint Valentine. He lived hundreds of years ago. This day is special for people in love. They send greeting cards called "Valentines" or they give gifts. Children often give Valentine cards.



giving a gift



a valentine

Victoria Day — May 24, or the Monday before

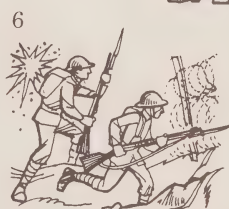
This is the birthday of Queen Victoria; she was the Queen of England for more than 60 years. In the evening there are fireworks in some of the public parks.



Queen Victoria

Remembrance Day — November 11

We remember the Canadian soldiers who died in World War I and II. Red poppy flowers grew on the graves of soldiers in Belgium. We buy red poppies and the money goes to veteran soldiers.



soldiers



a veteran soldier

Labour Day — The first Monday in September

This day honours all workers. There is often a parade on the main street of a city. Labour Day is the last day of summer holidays for children before they return to school.



a parade

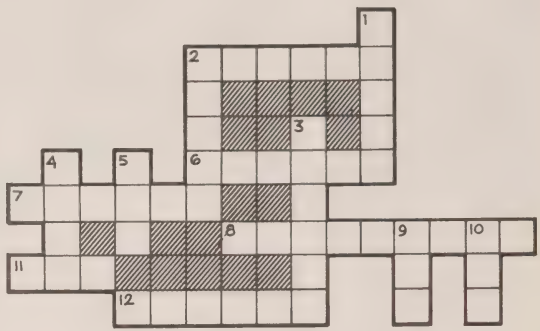
EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Down

- 1. After the second.
- 2. Before the second.
- 3. The day after Sunday.
- 4. Sixth month of the year.
- 5. Short form of "Sunday."
- 9. Short form of "Saturday."
- 10. Short form of "August."

Across

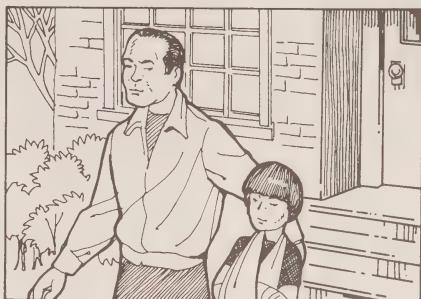
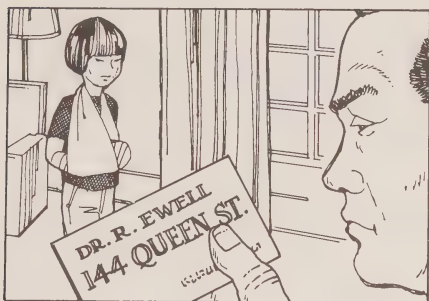
- 2. After the third.
- 6. After the first.
- 7. Eighth month of the year.
- 8. The day after Tuesday.
- 11. Short form of "February."
- 12. The day before Saturday.



The answers are on page 128.

UNIT 10: FINDING YOUR WAY AROUND

CONVERSATION: Lou and Ken Take the Bus



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Do you go to Queen Street?



Yes.



Please call out Queen Street.



Sure.



Queen Street next.



Thank you.



You're welcome.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: Does this bus go to Queen Street?

Picture 3: Would you please call out Queen Street?

Picture 4: Okay. I will.

Picture 5: Next stop Queen Street.

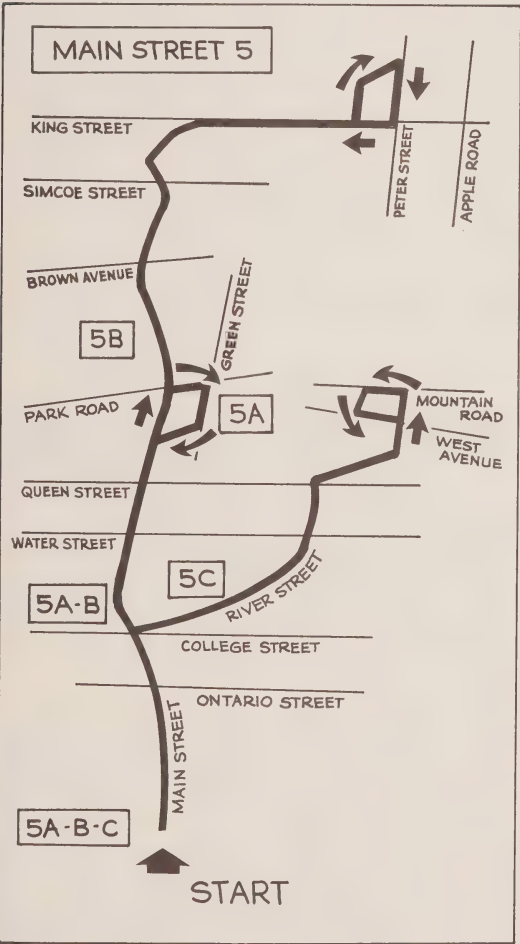
READING: Bus Routes

There are three buses on Main Street: 5A, 5B and 5C.



These three buses start out together on Main Street; then they go three different routes.

Here are the three bus routes.



Answer these questions.

- Does the Number 5A bus go to Queen St.? Yes
- Which bus goes to Brown Ave.? 5B
- Does the Number 5C bus go to King St.?
- Does the Number 5B go to Simcoe St.?
- Which bus goes to West Ave.?
- Which bus goes to Green St.?
- Does the Number 5B go to Mountain Rd.?
- Does the Number 5A go to Park Rd.?
- Which bus goes to Peter St.?
- Which bus goes to Mountain Rd.?
- Does the 5A bus go to King St.?

The answers are on page 128.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Asking for the Right Bus

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.

A 

You want to get to each street below. Ask your partner for the right bus. You can say:
How do I get to (Queen Street)?
or
What bus do I take to (Queen Street)?

B 

Look at the bus route on page 73. Answer your partner. You can say:
Take the (5A) bus.

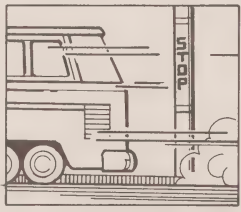



Write down the number of the bus.


Queen Street	<u>5A-B</u>	Simcoe Street	_____	West Avenue	_____
Water Street	_____	Park Road	_____	Mountain Road	_____
Peter Street	_____	Green Street	_____	Apple Road	_____
King Street	_____	Brown Avenue	_____	College Street	_____


Look at the bus route on page 73 and check your numbers.

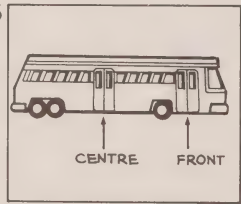
USEFUL INFORMATION: You Want to Get Off the Bus


- 1 

Buses do not stop at every bus stop.
- 2 

If you want to get off, pull the cord before you come to the bus stop.
- 3 

Then the bus will stop for you.
- 4 

Sometimes the driver says "Centre doors, please."
- 5 

That means you exit by the centre doors, not the front doors.
- 6 

You step down to open the doors.

GRAMMAR I: Questions with Does



This is a Yes or No question with **You**.

Do you live on King Street ?



This is a Yes or No question with **He**.

Does he live on King Street ?

This is the answer: **Yes** or **Yes** he does; or **No** or **No** he doesn't.

3. This is a question with **Ana**.

Does Ana live on King Street ?

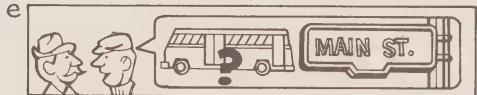
4. This is a question with **The 5A bus**.

Does the 5A bus go to King Street ?

5. Make questions.



Does she work on King Street ?



Does the bus go to Main Street ?









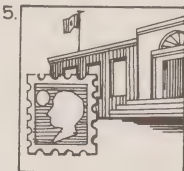




The answers are on page 128.

VOCABULARY: For Listening

PART I: Places

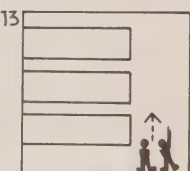
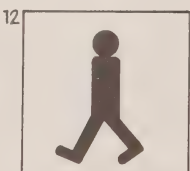
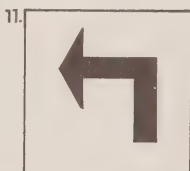
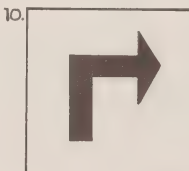


- 1. school
- 2. library
- 3. park
- 4. hospital
- 5. post office

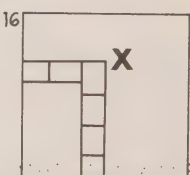
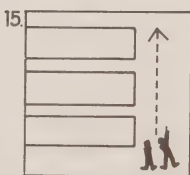
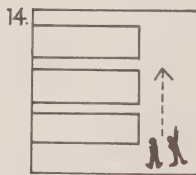
- 6. coffee shop
- 7. Canada Employment Centre
- 8. train station
- 9. bus station



PART II: Directions

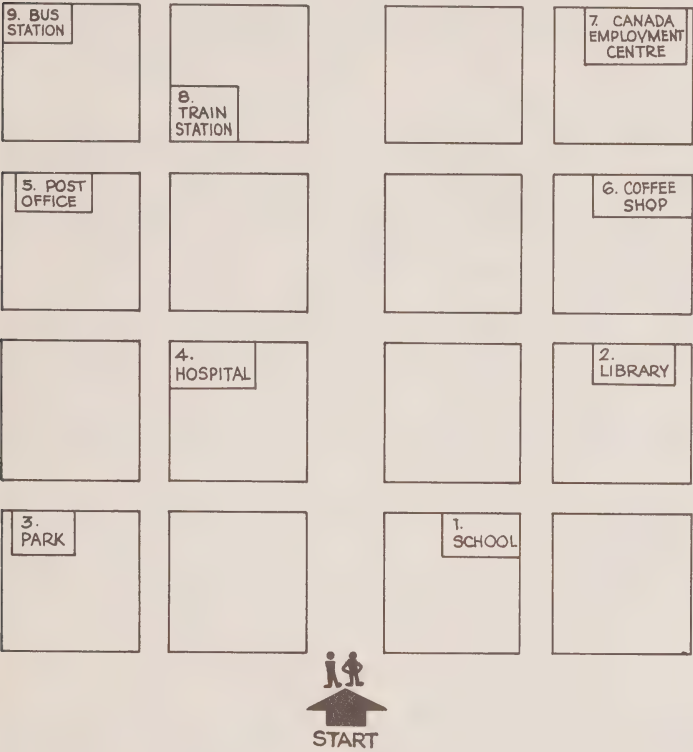


- 10. Turn right.
- 11. Turn left.
- 12. Walk.
- 13. Walk one block.
- 14. Walk two blocks.
- 15. Walk three blocks.
- 16. It's at the corner.



LISTENING ACTIVITY: Find the Place

- a. Before doing this activity look over the Vocabulary on page 76.
- b. Put your finger at START.
- c. Listen to the teacher's directions and follow with your finger. Where are you?



Take a partner.

You are the teacher. Give directions. Choose from these.

- Turn right.
- Turn left.
- Walk one block.
- Walk two blocks.
- It's at the corner.

GRAMMAR II: Questions with Where



This is a question with **Where** and **You**.

Where do you live?



This is a question with **Where** and **She**.

Where does she live?

This is the answer: on King Street

3. This is a question with **Where** and **He**.

Where does he live?

4. This is a question with **Where** and **Ana**.

Where does Ana live?

5. Make questions with **Where**.



Where does he live?





Where do you work?







The answers are on page 128.

READING: Bus Signs

Read the signs below. The pictures will help you understand the words.

a



1.  **WATCH**

2.  **YOUR STEP**

b



3.  **MOVE DOWN THE BUS**

c



4.  **KEEP ARM IN**

5.  **KEEP HEAD IN**

d



6.  **LIFT**

7.  **PUSH**

e



8.  **PULL DOWN LEVER**

9.  **PUSH OUT PANEL**

f




10.  **BREAK COVER**

11.  **TURN HANDLE**




Cover up the pictures. Look at each sign. Do you understand it?

PRONUNCIATION

These two questions sound almost the same.

 Does he live on King Street?

 Does she live on King Street?

 Listen. Circle what you hear,  or 

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

5. 

6. 

7. 

8. 


Here are questions and answers about Tony and Ana.

Where does he live? On Simcoe Street.

Where does she live? On King Street.

The two questions sound almost the same. Listen to the question and give the correct answer.

Here are the names of streets you can find in some Ontario cities.
Listen to each name and circle the number of the strong syllable.

- a.

1.	2.
Hu	ron

 St.
- b.

1.	2.	3.	4.
On	tar	i	o

 Ave.
- c.

1.	2.	3.
Mc	Ken	zie

 St.
- d.

1.	2.
Sim	coe

 St.
- e.

1.	2.	3.	4.
Ni	a	ga	ra

 Ave.
- f.

1.	2.	3.
Ave	nue	

 Rd.
- g.

1.	2.	3.	4.
Victor	i	a	

 Ave.
- h.

1.	2.	3.	4.
E	liz	a	beth

 St.
- i.

1.	2.
River	

 St.
- j.

1.	2.	3.
Mac	Don	ald

 St.
- k.

1.	2.
Col	lege

 St.

The answers are on page 128.

Write the name of the street you live on. _____

Write the name of the street your school is on. _____

Write the name of two or three streets you use when you come to school.

In each street name, show the strongest syllable. Ask your teacher to help you.

EXTRA STUDY: Two-line Dialogues

Complete each dialogue.

1. Why are you tired?
☐ I was at the hospital until four last night
2. Where does Ana live?
☐
3. What time is it?
☐
4. I'd like an appointment.
☐
5. Why are you tired?
☐
6. How's your sister?
☐

- Choose from these sentences.
- A. On King Street.
- B. How about October 19, at two o'clock?
- C. I was at the hospital until four last night.
- D. She's fine.
- E. I don't know. I don't have my watch.
- F. I was at work until twelve last night.

The answers are on page 128.

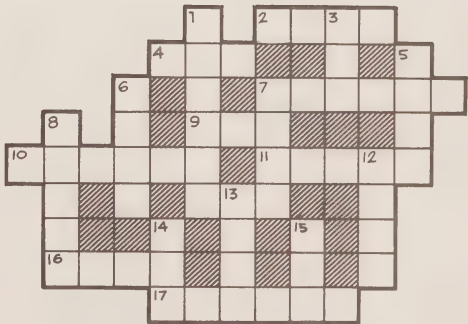
EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Look in the dictionary if necessary.

- Down:**
1. Between the front and back.
3. Automobile.
5. Opposite of "right."
6. The number after four.
7. You pull this when you want to get off the bus.
8. Opposite of "back."
12. Please ___ me.
13. The number before ten.
14. The number before two.
15. Short form of "Avenue."

- Across:**
2. Opposite of "front."
4. The number after nine.
7. Where two streets meet.
9. The number before three.
10. The person who drives the bus is the bus ___.
11. Opposite of "left."
16. A small city.
17. The number after ten.

The answers are on page 128.

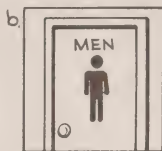


UNIT 11: GETTING DIRECTIONS INSIDE

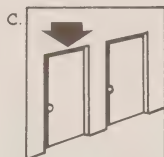
CONVERSATION: Lou Asks For Directions



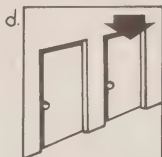
washroom



washroom



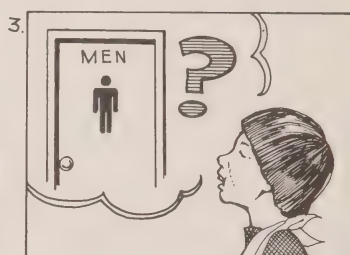
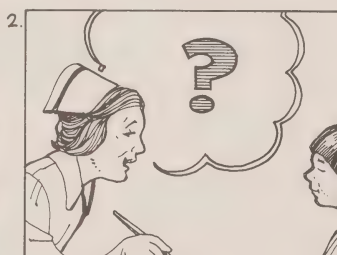
the first door



the second door



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



Words for the Conversation on page 84.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES

Make as many conversations as you can.

1

Where's the washroom?

2

Turn right.
It's the second door.

3

I'm sorry.
I don't know.

4

Thank you.

5

Pardon?

6

Thanks anyway.

7


You're welcome.


8


Turn right.
It's the second door.


READING: Signs in a Building


Here are some signs that you might see in a building.

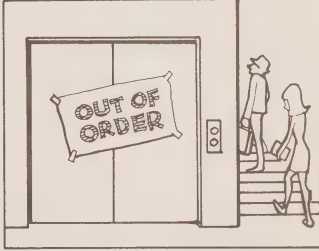
a.

b.

c.

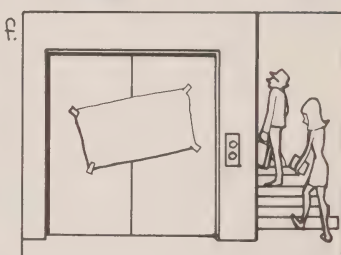
d.

e.

f.

83

Here are the pictures without the signs. Can you remember the signs?



Match the picture to the sign and put the letter in the box.

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> d Please use revolving doors. | 2. <input type="checkbox"/> e Fire door. Keep closed. | 3. <input type="checkbox"/> c Caution. Wet floors. |
| 4. <input type="checkbox"/> f Employees only. | 5. <input type="checkbox"/> b Out of Order. | 6. <input type="checkbox"/> a Wet Paint. |

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

- | | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Excuse me. | 4. Turn right. | 7. Excuse me. |
| 2. Yes? | 5. It's the second door. | 8. It's the other way. |
| 3. Where's the washroom? | 6. Thanks. | 9. Thank you. |

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: Pardon me.

Picture 3: Could you please tell me where the washroom is?
(MORE FORMAL)

Picture 4: It's to the right.

Picture 7: Just a minute. (INFORMAL)
Wait. (INFORMAL)

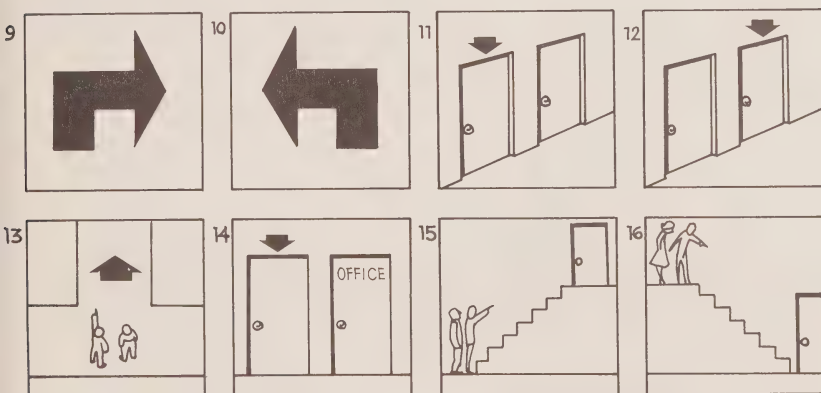
VOCABULARY: For the Listening Activity

Part I: Places and Objects Inside A Building



1. office
2. exit
3. elevator
4. telephone
5. coffee shop
6. water fountain
7. fire alarm
8. library

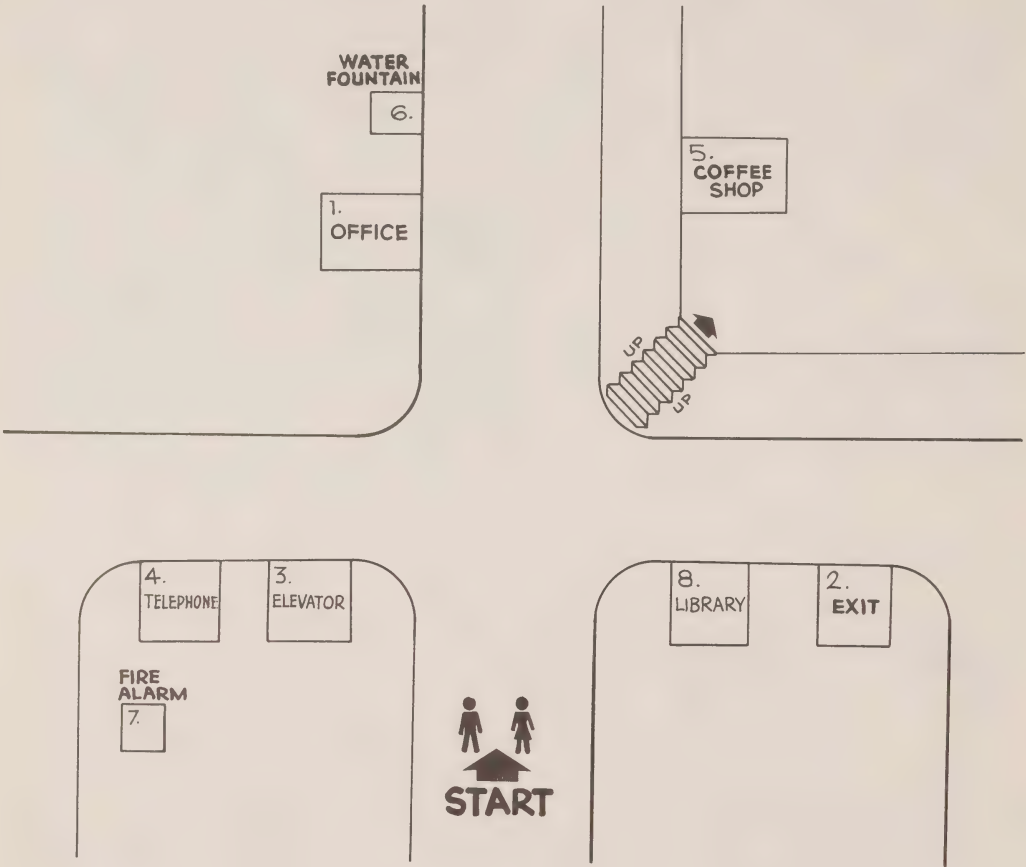
PART II: Directions



9. Turn right.
10. Turn left.
11. The first door.
12. The second door.
13. Go straight ahead.
14. Next to the office.
15. One floor up.
16. One floor down.

LISTENING ACTIVITY: Find the Place

- a. Before doing this activity look over the Vocabulary on page 85.
- b. Put your finger at **START**.
- c. Listen to the teacher's directions and follow with your finger. Where are you?



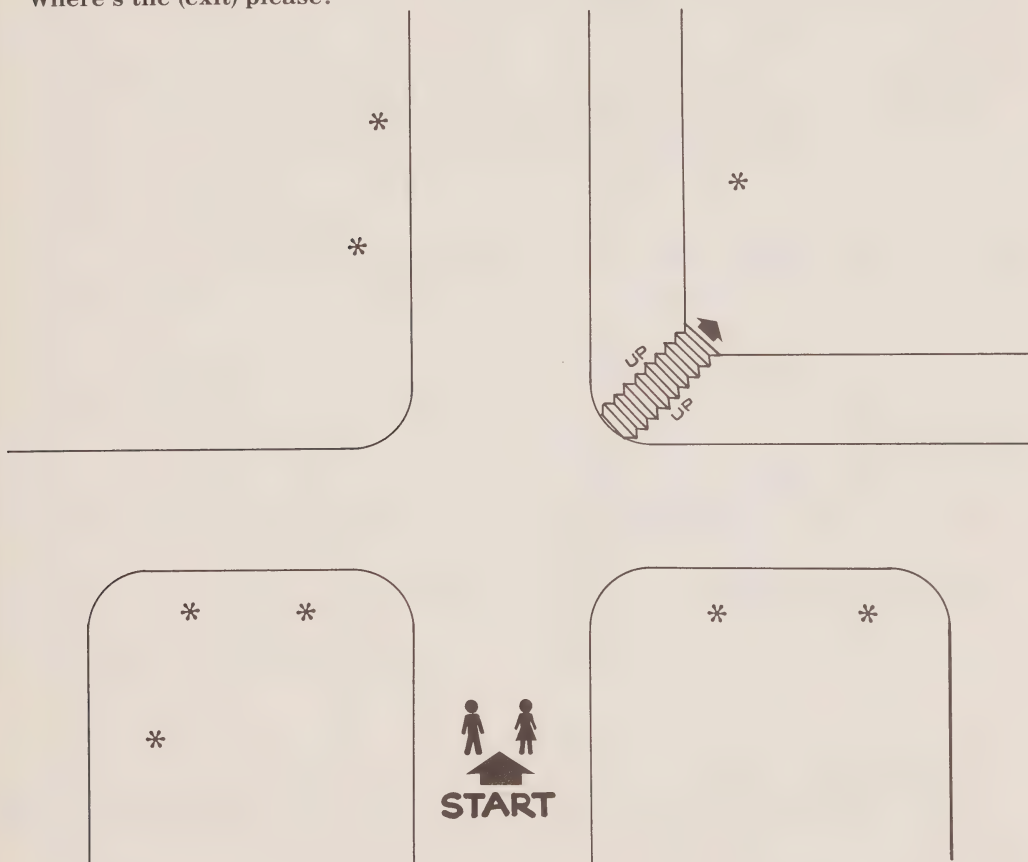
Take a partner.
You are the teacher. Give directions. Choose from these:

- Turn right.
- Turn left.
- Turn left again.
- Go straight ahead.

It's { the first door.
the second door.
next to the office.
one floor up.

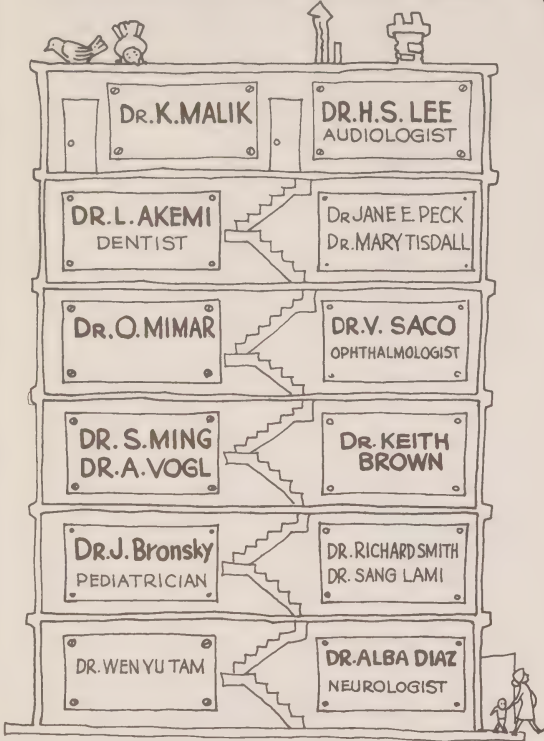
COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Directions

- Tear out each picture card at the bottom of the page.
- Take a partner.
- Put one picture card on each star. Your partner doesn't look.
- Your partner takes one of his/her picture cards and says:
Where's the (exit) please?
- You look at your floor plan, give directions and your partner puts his/her card in the right place on his/her floor plan.
- When all the picture cards are placed, check to make sure both floor plans look the same.



VOCABULARY: The Floors of a Building

Here are some doctors' offices in a building.



On what floor is each doctor?

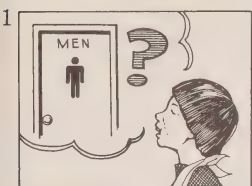
Write the answers.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| a. Doctor Akemi | g. Doctor Peck |
| <u>the fifth floor</u> | _____ |
| b. Doctor Tam | h. Doctor Ming |
| <u>the first floor</u> | _____ |
| c. Doctor Saco | i. Doctor Lee |
| _____ | _____ |
| d. Doctor Mimar | j. Doctor Malik |
| _____ | _____ |
| e. Doctor Diaz | k. Doctor Smith |
| _____ | _____ |
| f. Doctor Bronsky | l. Doctor Lami |
| _____ | _____ |

The answers are on page 129.

library fire alarm water fountain coffee shop telephone elevator exit office

GRAMMAR: Question-word Questions with Is



Long form:

Where is the washroom?

Short form:

Where's the washroom?

Where's the washroom?

2. The short form: what happens.

Where is**Where's****Where's****= Where's**

3. The short form with What and How.

What's your name?**How's your little boy?**

4. Make questions with Where.

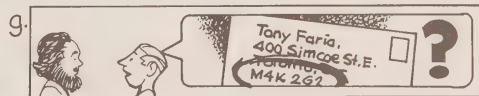
**Where's the washroom?**





Make questions with What.

**What's your name?**





The answers are on page 129.

PRONUNCIATION: The Sound (ə)

- A. Look at this word. It has two syllables.

1.	2.
sev	en

- B. The first syllable is strong.
We stress it; we say it louder.
It is called the stressed syllable.

①	2
sev	en



- C. Here is the stressed syllable.

sev

Here is the unstressed syllable.

en

- D. The vowel **e** in the unstressed syllable is pronounced /ə/.
This weak and short sound /ə/ is called the Schwa.
- E. Here are more two-syllable words in which the first syllable is stressed. The second syllable in each word is unstressed and has the sound (ə).

1 **quarter**

The letter **e** is pronounced (ə).

2 **pencil**

The letter **i** is pronounced (ə).

3 **dollar**

The letter **a** is pronounced (ə).

4 **langu¹age²**

The letter **a** is pronounced (ə).

5 **doct¹or²**

The letter **o** is pronounced (ə).

6 **second**

The letter **o** is pronounced (ə).

- F. Here is a two-syllable word in which the second syllable is stressed. The first syllable is unstressed and has the sound (ə).

7 **police**

The letter **o** is pronounced (ə).

G. In most two-syllable nouns in English, the first syllable has the strongest stress.

H. Each word below has the sound (ə). Listen. Which letter is pronounced (ə)? Write the letter.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--|---|------------------------------|
| 1. exit <u> i </u> | 4. nickel <u> </u> | 7. ¹ al ² arm <u> </u> | 9. welcome <u> </u> |
| 2. office <u> </u> | 5. ¹ sen ² tence <u> </u> | 8. hundred <u> </u> | 10. about <u> </u> |
| 3. July <u> </u> | 6. answer <u> </u> | | |

I. In each word below there is no Schwa (ə). The first syllable has the strongest stress, but both syllables are stressed. There is no unstressed syllable.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 11. coffee | 13. Monday | 15. country | 17. slowly |
| 12. fourteen | 14. forty | 16. morning | |

PRONUNCIATION: Noun Compounds

The words below are called noun compounds. A noun compound is made up of two words. Listen to each compound and circle the number of the strongest syllable.

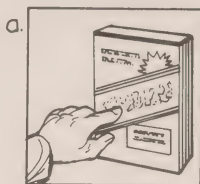
- | | |
|--|---|
| a. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">① 2 3</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">coffee shop</div> | b. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">1 ② 3 4 5</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">apartment number</div> |
| c. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">1 2 3</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">bus station</div> | d. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">1 2 3</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">train station</div> |
| e. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">1 2 3</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">fire alarm</div> | |
| f. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">1 2 3 4</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">fire department</div> | g. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">1 2 3 4 5</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">department number</div> |
| h. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">1 2 3</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">post office</div> | |
| i. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">1 2 3 4</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">water fountain</div> | j. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">1 2 3</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">postal code</div> |
| k. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100px; margin-bottom: 5px;">1 2 3 4 5</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">telephone number</div> | |

Does the strongest syllable come in the first word or the second word of a noun compound?

The answers are on page 129.

UNIT 12: SHOPPING FOR GROCERIES

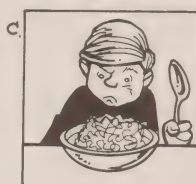
VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



this box



that box



(to) not like

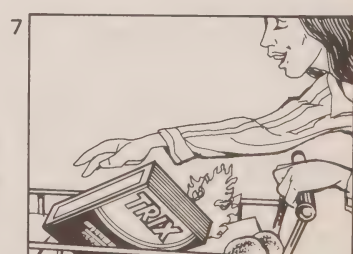
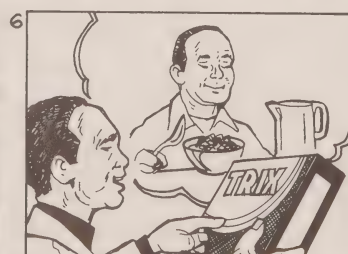
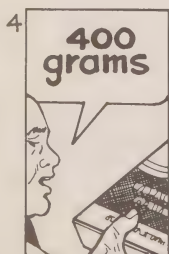


(to) like

CONVERSATION: Lou and Su Ping Go Shopping



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



Words for the Conversation on page 99.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: The Price of Groceries

Beside a write what you pay for each item, or how much you think it costs.



bread

a. _____ a loaf
b. _____ a loaf



milk

a. _____ a litre
b. _____ a litre



butter

a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram



coffee

a. _____ for 57 grams
b. _____ for 57 grams



teabags

a. _____ for 12
b. _____ for 12



hand soap

a. _____ a bar
b. _____ a bar



sugar

a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram



toothpaste

a. _____ for 50 ml.
b. _____ for 50 ml.



onions

a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram



potatoes

a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram



beef


a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram




chicken

a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.

A. 

Ask what B pays for each item above and write it beside b.
You can say:
How much do you pay for (bread)?
or
What do you pay for (bread)?

B. 

Answer A. You can say any of these sentences:
\$ _____.
I think \$ _____.
I don't remember.
I don't buy that.
I haven't bought that for a long time.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Grocery Products Without Brand Names

Some grocery products are cheaper because they have no brand names and less money is spent on advertising. These products have no pictures on the containers.

Do you buy products without brand names?
Which products?



Brand name



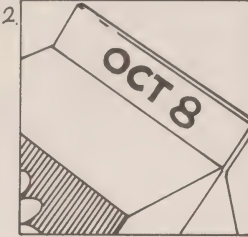
No brand name

READING: Expiry and Packaging Dates

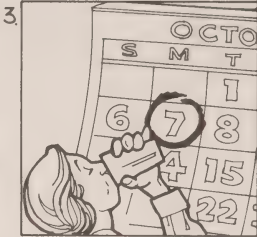
PART I: Expiry Dates



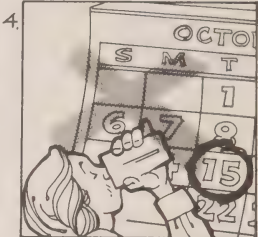
Here is a container of milk.



This is the expiry date. The milk is good until Oct. 8.



On Oct. 7 the milk is still good for use. You can drink it.



After Oct. 8, the milk may not be good.

Today is Aug. 28, 1984. The items below are in your kitchen. Are they still good?



Yes



Part II: Packaging Dates



This man is packaging meat.



The packaging date is October twenty-first.

Read these packaging dates. Write out each one in your notebook.



SPEAKING ACTIVITY: Directions in the Supermarket

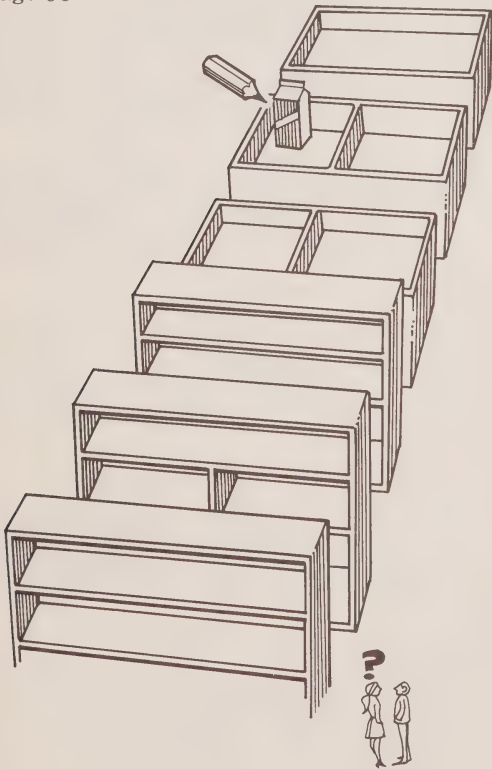
Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

Here are some groceries you are looking for.

bread	coffee
teabags	butter
milk	toothpaste
hand soap	chicken

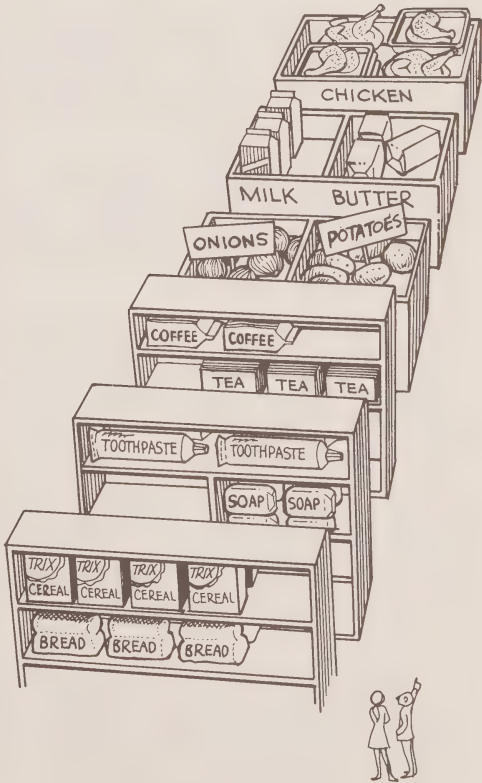
Ask your partner for directions. You can say:
Where can I find (the bread)?
 When you get directions draw it in the grocery product.
 If you don't know how to draw it, look on page 93.



B. 

Give your partner directions. You can say:

- On the bottom shelf.
- On the top shelf.
- In the next aisle.
- In the second aisle.
- In the third aisle.
- In the fourth aisle.
- In the last aisle.



Unfold this page. Check to see that your products are in the correct place.
 Then switch with your partner.

GRAMMAR: Negative Sentences with Doesn't



This is an **AFFIRMATIVE** statement.

Lou likes TRIX cereal.



This is a **NEGATIVE** statement.

Lou doesn't like MUNCHIES cereal.

3. The short form:
what happens.

does not

does not

doesn't

doesn't

= doesn't

4. Negative statement with He.

He doesn't like MUNCHIES cereal.

5. Negative statement with She.

She doesn't like TRIX cereal.

6. Make affirmative and negative statements with like.



He likes chicken.





He doesn't like beef.











The answers are on page 129.

7. Here are two new pronouns.

we



they



8. Here are more negative statements.

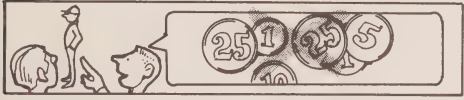
I You We They	don't	live on Main St. work on Sunday.
He She Lou Ana My friend	doesn't	have a watch. like chicken. know the time.

9. Make negative statements with the verb **have**.



She doesn't have change.









Make negative statements with the verbs **work** and **live**.



I don't work on Saturday.





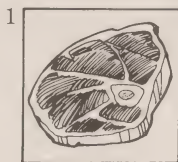




The answers are on page 129.

PRONUNCIATION: The Sounds (ē) and (i).

Meat has the sound (ē). Mitt has the sound (i). The sounds (ē) and (i) can be confused.



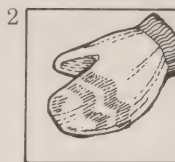
meat

To make the sound (ē), press the tongue against the upper side teeth and spread the lips.



Here are more words with the sound (ē), from Units 1 to 12.

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 5. <u>h</u> e | 9. sh <u>e</u> |
| 6. coff <u>e</u> e | 10. thir <u>te</u> en |
| 7. s <u>ea</u> t | 11. pl <u>ea</u> se |
| 8. sorr <u>y</u> | 12. twent <u>y</u> |



mitt

To make the sound (i), relax the mouth. This is a short vowel.



Here are more words with the sound (i), from Units 1 to 12.

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 13. liv <u>e</u> | 18. litt <u>le</u> |
| 14. b <u>i</u> g | 19. ch <u>i</u> cken |
| 15. mil <u>k</u> | 20. s <u>i</u> x |
| 16. it' <u>s</u> | 21. ch <u>i</u> n |
| 17. unt <u>i</u> l | |

Here are two sentences with (ē) and (i).

- a. Do you have the meat? b. Do you have the mitt?



Listen. Which sentence do you hear, a or b? Write a or b.

22. _____ 23. _____ 24. _____ 25. _____ 26. _____ 27. _____ 28. _____ 29. _____

Here are some other sounds that can be confused.

(e) as in ten and (ā) as in name

(a) as in hat and (o) as in clock

(u) as in look and (ü) as in too

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. How much is that? | 5. This is a dollar-fifty |
| 2. A dollar-fifty. | for five hundred grams. |
| 3. How many grams is it? | 6. But I like this. |
| 4. Four hundred. | 7. Okay. |

Other Sentences You May Hear

- Picture 1: How much does that cost?
What's the price of that?
- Picture 3: How many grams does it weigh?
- Picture 7: Okay. We'll take this one.
Okay. Let's get this one.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

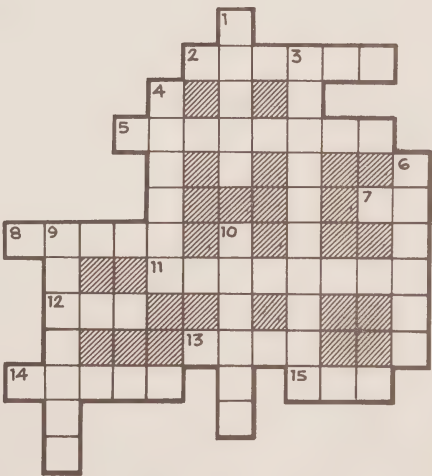
Look in the dictionary, if necessary.

Down:

- Some people put this in their tea or coffee to make it sweet.
- We use this to brush our teeth. It comes in a tube.
- Some people drink this in the morning.
- After the third and before the fifth.
- $2 \times 50 = \text{one } \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$
- After the first and before the third.

Across:

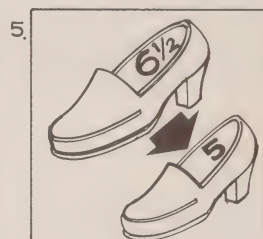
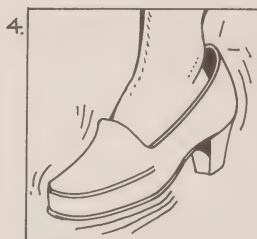
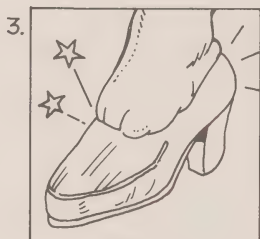
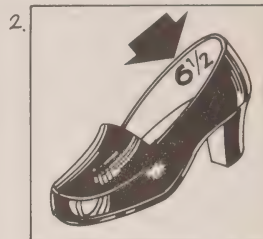
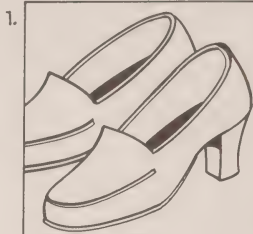
- We spread this on our bread or toast. It's made from milk.
- These vegetables have brown skin and grow in the ground. We cook them.
- Opposite of "Yes."
- The number after two.
- This carries you up and down from floor to floor inside a building.
- This word makes the sentence negative.
- This part of your body is at the bottom of your leg.
- Su Ping asked Lou how many the box weighed.
- Everybody needs to in order to live.



The answers are on page 129.

UNIT 13: SHOPPING FOR CLOTHES

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



Nouns

1. shoes
2. the size

Adjectives

3. small
4. big
5. a smaller size

Verbs

6. (to) touch

CONVERSATION: Su Ping Goes Shopping for Shoes



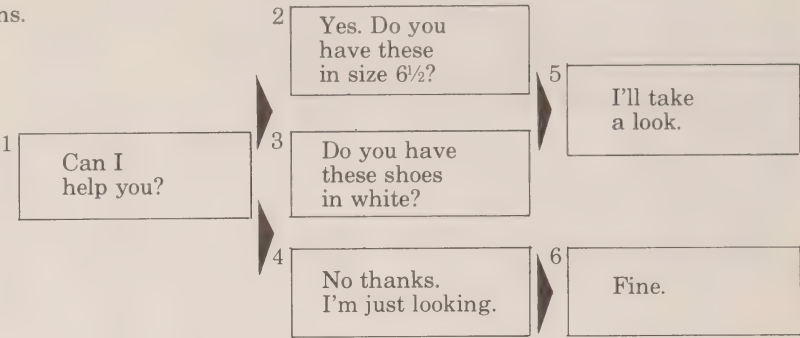
First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



Words for the Conversation on page 104.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES


Make three conversations.





READING: Instructions for Care of Clothing





Clothing labels sometimes have instructions. The instructions tell you how to wash or clean the clothing. Here are some instructions and some pictures to show the meaning.


a.  Dry clean.


b.  Machine wash.


c.  Lay flat to dry.

d.  Low iron.

e.  Hand wash.

f.  Do not bleach.

g.  Line dry or Hang to dry.

h.  Use mild soap.

Here are the same pictures. Can you remember the instructions?

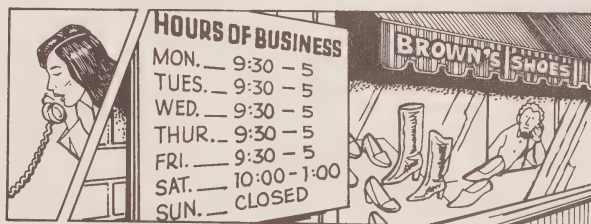


Match the picture to the instruction and put the letter in the box.

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> e Hand wash. | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Line dry <u>or</u> Hang to dry. | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> Do not bleach. |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Machine wash. | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Lay flat to dry. | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Use mild soap only. |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Dry clean. | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> Low iron. | |

READING: Hours of Business

Before Su Ping went shopping, she called the store to find out the hours of business.



You are the storekeeper. Answer these questions.

- What time do you open on Monday? Nine-thirty
- What time do you close on Wednesday? Five o'clock
- What time do you open on Saturday? _____
- What time do you open on Tuesday? _____
- What time do you close on Friday? _____
- What time do you open on Thursday? _____



COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Hours of Business

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

You are a shopper. Telephone the store to find out the missing hours of business and write them in. You can say:

What time do you open (on Monday)?
and
What time do you close (on Tuesday)?

Monday	<input type="text"/> - 6 p.m.
Tuesday	9 a.m. - <input type="text"/>
Wednesday	9 a.m. - <input type="text"/>
Thursday	<input type="text"/> - 9 p.m.
Friday	9 a.m. - 8 p.m.
Saturday	10 a.m. - <input type="text"/>
Sunday	

B. 

You are the salesman. Look here at the hours of business and answer your partner's questions.

Monday	9 a.m. - 6 p.m.
Tuesday	9 a.m. - 6 p.m.
Wednesday	9 a.m. - 6 p.m.
Thursday	9 a.m. - 9 p.m.
Friday	9 a.m. - 8 p.m.
Saturday	10 a.m. - 2 p.m.
Sunday	Closed

Unfold this page. Check to see that you wrote the correct times. Then switch with your partner.

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

- | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------|--|
| 1. Can I help you? | 3. I'll take a look. | 7. Sorry. I don't have a smaller size. |
| 2. Yes. Do you have these in size 6½? | 4. Have a seat. | 8. Okay. Thank you. |
| | 5. Here you are. | 9. Ken. Don't touch the shoes. |
| | 6. They're too big. | |

Other Sentences You May Hear

- Picture 1: May I help you?
Do you need some help?
- Picture 2: Yes. I'd like to try these in size 6½.
- Picture 3: I'll see if we have a size 6½.
- Picture 6: They're too loose.
They don't fit.
- Picture 7: Sorry. I don't have anything smaller.
Sorry. There's nothing smaller.
Sorry. 6½ is the smallest we have.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Returning an Item



When you buy an item, keep the sales receipt.



If you don't like the item,



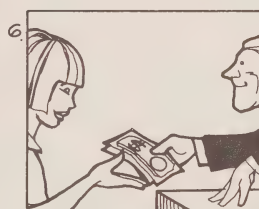
and you want to return it to the store,



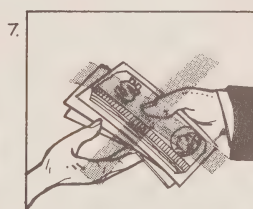
you need the receipt.



In some stores, they will take back the item



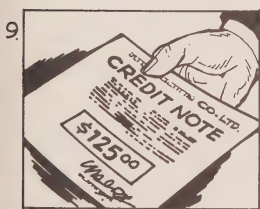
and give you a cash refund.



Some stores will not give you a cash refund.



Some stores will exchange the item for something different.



Some stores will give you a credit note, to buy something else.



The credit note is good for a certain time.



When you buy an item, read the sales receipt. It tells about refunds and exchanges.

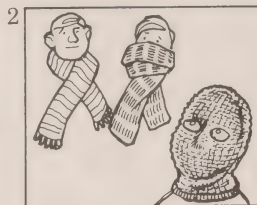


Usually, if the item is on sale, no refund or exchange is possible.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Winter Clothing



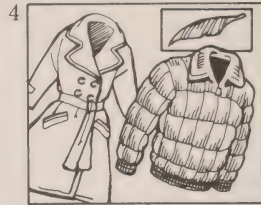
It's important to dress warmly in winter. Otherwise parts of your body can freeze.



A scarf helps. In extreme cold, you might need a balaclava.



Body heat goes out through your head. Wear a hat or hood and cover your ears.



Wear clothes that keep body heat in. Wool and down are good materials.



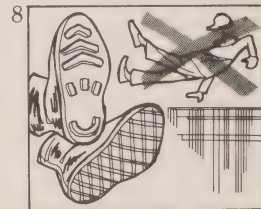
Layers of clothing also help keep in body heat,



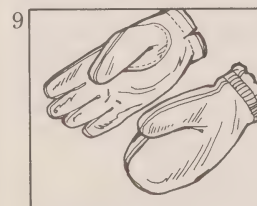
for example: long underwear, tights, and sweaters.



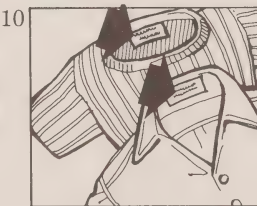
Wear boots with a warm lining and/or one or two pairs of socks.



Buy boots that have traction on the bottom so you don't slip on the ice.



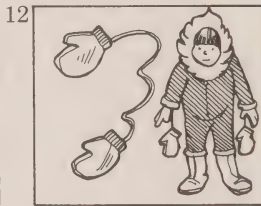
Wear gloves or mitts. Mitts are usually warmer than gloves.



Look at the labels. Natural materials like cotton and wool are warmer than synthetics.



Remember that the cold will affect your body more if there is a wind.



For your child you can get a snowsuit. You can attach mitts on a string so they won't get lost.

GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION: Plural Nouns



Don't touch
the shoes.

Singular (one):



Plural (two or more):



2. How to write the plural:

a. We usually add **s** to the singular noun.

shoe

clock

shoe



clock



b. If the singular noun ends in **s**, **z**, **ch** or **sh**, we add **es**.

watch

address

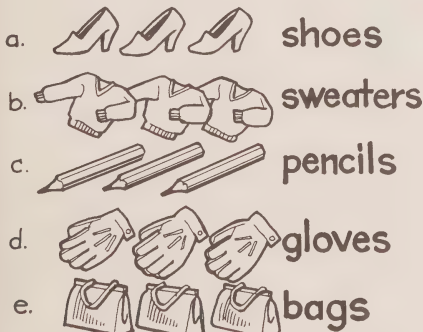
watch



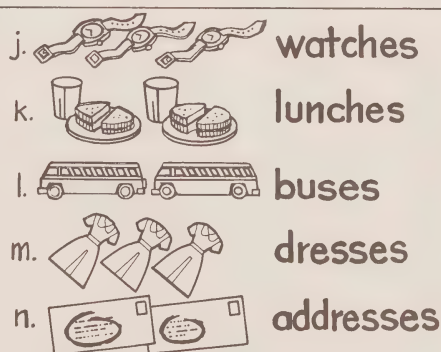
address



3. The plural ending **s** is sometimes pronounced (z), for example:



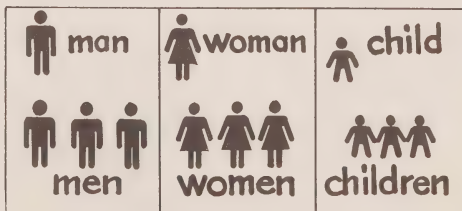
4. The plural ending **es** is pronounced (iz), for example:







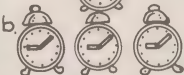
5. The plural ending **s** is sometimes pronounced (s), for example:



6. Some nouns have irregular plurals, for example:



Listen. Circle what you hear, a or b.

1. a.  b. 	2. a.  b. 	3. a.  b. 	4. a.  b. 	5. a.  b. 
6. a.  b. 	7. a.  b. 	8. a.  b. 	9. a.  b. 	10. a.  b. 
11. a.  b. 	12. a.  b. 	13. a.  b. 	14. a.  b. 	15. a.  b. 

Make sentences. Use singular or plural.



Don't touch the shoes.



The answers are on page 129.

EXTRA STUDY: Spelling

1. Some singular nouns end in a consonant followed by **y**.

library factory

2. To make the plural noun, change **y** to **i** and add **es**.

libraries factories

3. Write the plural of each noun below in your notebook.

- a. baby e. lady
- b. fly f. body
- c. butterfly g. spy
- d. sky

4. If a vowel precedes the final **y**, keep the **y** and add **s**.

Singular: day boy
Plural: days boys

5. Write the plural of each noun below in your notebook.

- a. key d. boy
- b. donkey e. toy
- c. way f. tray

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

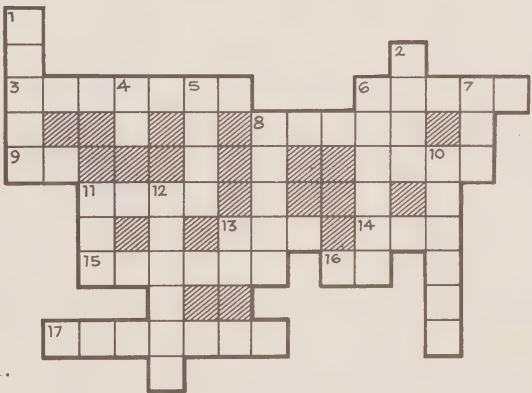
Look in the dictionary, if necessary.

Down:

- 1. Plural of "woman."
- 2. Can I ____ you?
- 4. The feminine pronoun is "she." The masculine pronoun is ____.
- 5. Part of the body, below the head.
- 6. Opposite of "open."
- 7. The number after nine.
- 8. Plural of "shoe."
- 10. The number before twelve.
- 11. You can carry money in this.
- 12. The same as no. 6 down.
- 13. Excuse ____.

Across:

- 3. You can wash your clothes in a washing ____.
- 6. Plural of "cent."
- 8. Opposite of "big."
- 9. Opposite of "yes."
- 11. Opposite of "front" and part of the body.
- 13. Plural of "man."
- 14. Short form of "evening."
- 15. These keep your hands warm.
- 16. Short form of "advertisement."
- 17. You usually need the sales ____ if you want to return an item to the store.



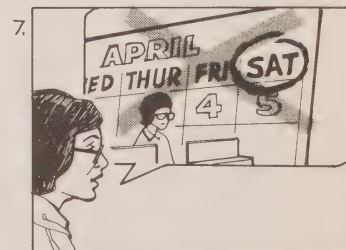
The answers are on page 129.

UNIT 14: IN THE POST OFFICE

CONVERSATION: Ana Goes to the Post Office



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.

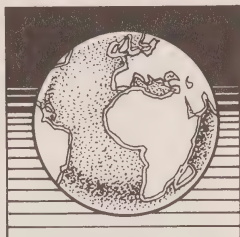


Words for Conversation on page 116.

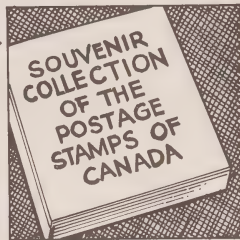
EXTENSION WITH CHOICES



Some people collect stamps.

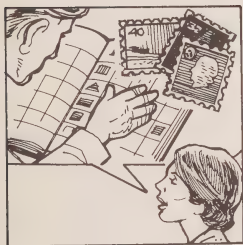


Stamp collecting is a worldwide hobby.

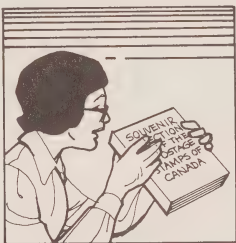


Every year, the Canadian Post Office puts out a souvenir collection of stamps.

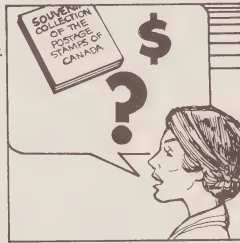
Make two conversations:



1. Do you have collectors' stamps?



2. Yes, I have the souvenir album for this year.



4. How much is it?



6. \$24.95.



3. No, I'm sorry we don't.



5. Where can I get some?



7. You can write to Ottawa. Here's the address.



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people in your class these questions:
 Do you have time for a hobby? (If yes) what is it?
 Write the names and answers in your notebook.

VOCABULARY: Stamps



- A. a one-cent stamp

B. a five-cent stamp

C. a ten-cent stamp

D. a twenty-five cent stamp
- E. a thirty-two-cent stamp

F. a thirty-seven-cent stamp

G. a sixty-four-cent stamp

H. a one-dollar stamp

Note that there is no **s** on the word **cent**. We don't make it plural.



COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Buying Stamps

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.

A.

Ask your partner for stamps.
You can say:
I need (four 32-cent stamps).

B.

Tell A the cost, for example:
That's (\$1.28).

Here are more examples.	
Five 32-cent stamps	\$1.60
One 32-cent stamp and one 37-cent stamp	.69
Three 64-cent stamps	1.92
Ten 64-cent stamps	6.40
Two 37-cent stamps	.74

READING AND WRITING: Customs Declaration

Ana sent a package to her parents in Chile. Here is some of the information that she put on the customs declaration form.

1. Name and Address of Sender Ana Pinto 21 Main St. Toronto M6Z 2P2 Ontario Canada			2. Name and Address of Addressee SRA. Gladys de Pinto Avenida Huérfanos 1778 Santiago, Chile				
3. Weight of Parcel		4. Declared Total Value					
kg g		\$ 51.00					
1 750							
5. No. of Items		Detailed List of Contents		6. Value		7. Net Weight	
				\$	¢	kg	g
1		pair shoes		35	00	1	500
1		blouse		16	00		250
8. Sender's Instructions in Case of Non-delivery							
a. Unless disposal instructions are given, the parcel will be returned without notice at sender's expense.							
b. If delivery of this parcel cannot be effected, dispose of it as checked below:							
9 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Return to origin (at sender's expense)				a <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> by surface			
				b <input type="checkbox"/> by air			
10 <input type="checkbox"/> Deliver or redirect to ►				Name and Address			
a <input type="checkbox"/> by surface				_____			
b <input type="checkbox"/> by air				_____			
11 <input type="checkbox"/> Treat the parcel as abandoned							

You want to send a package. Fill out this information for yourself.

1. Name and Address of Sender			2. Name and Address of Addressee				
3. Weight of Parcel		4. Declared Total Value					
kg g		\$					
5. No. of Items		Detailed List of Contents		6. Value		7. Net Weight	
				\$	¢	kg	g

USEFUL INFORMATION: Registered Mail



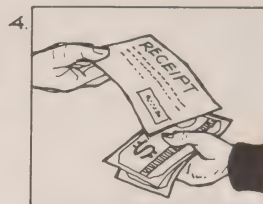
You are sending a package or letter to your friend by mail.



You want to be sure that it arrives.



You can register it. You can say: "I'd like to register this."



You pay money for registration and insurance. Keep the receipt.



The mail carrier hands the package to whoever answers the door.



That person signs his or her name.



If no one is at home,



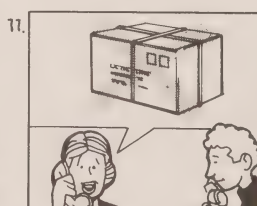
the mail carrier writes out a "Delivery Notice."



He leaves it for your friend.



Your friend takes it to the post office and gets the package.



If your friend doesn't get the package,



you take the receipt to the post office and fill out a form to get the insurance money.

Some items can't be sent by registered mail, for example: cash, precious metal or precious stones. If you have any questions, ask at the post office.

GRAMMAR: Yes and No Questions with Is and Are



Statement: The post office **is** open on Saturday.

Question: **Is** the post office open on Saturday?



Statement: You **are** tired.

Question: **Are** you tired?

3. How to make questions with the verb be. Put the form of the verb be in front.



4. Make questions with Is.



Is he from Toronto?



Make questions with Are.



Are you hurt?



The answers are on page 130.

PRONUNCIATION: Is he vs. He is

1. The voice falls at the end of a statement.

He's from Toronto.

2. The voice usually rises at the end of a Yes or No question.

Is he from Toronto? Yes

3. However, the voice can sometimes fall at the end of a Yes or No question.

Is he from Toronto?

4. If the voice falls at the end of a Yes or No question, it can sound almost like a statement. Note that in a question, the **h** in the word **he** is often not pronounced. **Is he** is pronounced (izē).

Statement: He's from Toronto. Question: Is he from Toronto?
(izē).

5. Listen. Circle what you hear, a question or a statement.

1a ?
b .

2a ?
b .

3a ?
b .

4a ?
b .

5a ?
b .

6a ?
b .

7a ?
b .

8a ?
b .

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

1. Four thirty-two-cent stamps please.
2. That's a dollar twenty-eight.
3. Thank you.
4. How much is this?

5. Two-fifty.
6. Are you open on Saturday?
7. No. I'm sorry. We're not.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 4: How much does this cost to mail?
How much will this cost to mail?

Picture 6: Is the post office open on Saturday?
Are you open on Saturdays?

UNIT 15: OCCUPATIONS

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



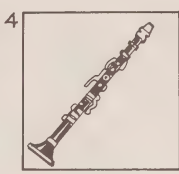
musician



instruments



piano



clarinet



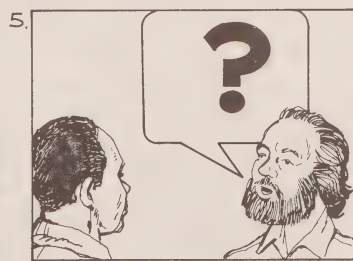
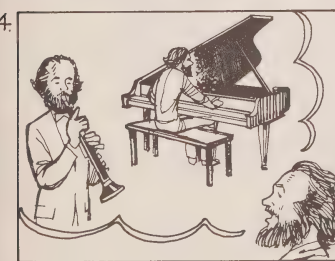
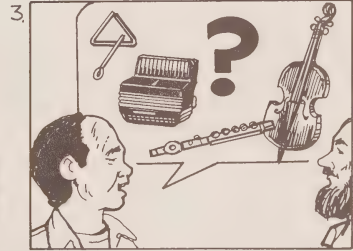
painter

CONVERSATION:

Tony and Lou Talk About Their Occupations

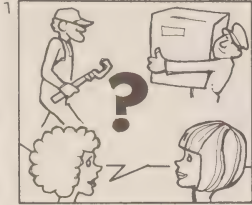


First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



Words for the Conversation on page 119.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Looking for Good Service



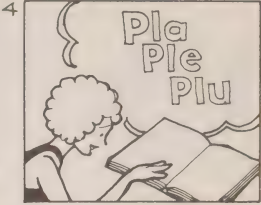
If you need a good plumber or mover, ask your friends.



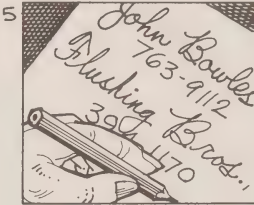
If your friends don't know any, there are other things you can do.



You can look in the Yellow Pages telephone directory.



The services are listed in alphabetical order.*



Write down two or three names and telephone numbers.



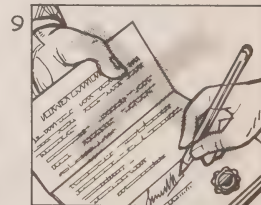
You can call these people and get two or three different prices.



You can also ask the Better Business Bureau if a company has had complaints.



If someone comes to your door to sell you a service,



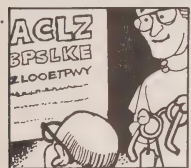
don't sign anything right away. Take time to think about it.

* If you can't find the service, look in the index. In the Toronto Yellow Pages directory, there are two parts. Each part has a separate index.

In the White Pages directory, there is a section at the back which lists government services. These pages are blue.

READING: The Yellow Pages

Look in your Yellow Pages telephone book. Find these services and write the page numbers.



Opticians . . .
Optometrists, page _____



Dentists, page _____

3. Plumbing, page _____

4. Moving, page _____

5. Television Sales
and service, pages _____

6. Other _____, page _____

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

1. What kind of work did you do in Portugal?
2. I was a musician.
3. What instruments did you play?

4. Piano and clarinet.
5. What about you?
6. I was a painter in China.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: What did you do in Portugal?
What was your job in Portugal?



SPEAKING ACTIVITY: Occupations

- a. Tony's occupation is "musician." Can you say your occupation in English? If not, look in the dictionary or ask your teacher.
- b. Ask different people in your class what kind of work they did in their own country. You can say:

Where are you from?

or
What country are you from?
and

What did you do in (Portugal)?

or
What kind of work did you do in (Portugal)?

In your notebook, write the name of each person, their country, and their occupation.

NAME

COUNTRY

OCCUPATION

READING: Advertisements from the Yellow Pages

Read these ads.

A



**EMERGENCY
TELEVISION
SERVICE**

**BROWN'S
ELECTRONICS**

10 YEARS
EXPERIENCE

**FAST
REPAIRS
CITY-WIDE**

**24 HOURS
7 DAYS A WEEK**

T.V. TECHNICIANS
CERTIFIED BY ONTARIO
DEPARTMENT OF LABOUR

*Written Guarantee
Reasonable Rates*

123 • 9799

B

**MAIN
STREET TV**

SERVICE • SALES • RENTALS

REPAIRS TO ALL MAKES •

ADMIRAL • GE • MAGNAVOX •
QUASAR • SONY • TOSHIBA •
ZENITH • AND MANY MORE...

HOME SERVICE 9am. - 8pm.

ITEMIZED WRITTEN GUARANTEE

3590 MAIN ST.

SALES 321-4567

SERVICE 999-8888

ESTABLISHED 1960

Answer these questions.

1. You want to buy a television. Where do you go?
2. Your television is broken. It's 10:00 p.m. Who do you call?
3. You have a Quasar television which is broken.
 - a. Who do you call?
 - b. What number do you call?
4. It's 7:00 p.m. Your television is broken and you want someone to come to your house to fix it. Who can you call?
5. You want to rent a television set for a period of time. Who do you call?
6. You want your television set fixed by someone who has a certificate from the Ontario Department of Labour. Who do you call?
7. Your television is broken. You want the company with the most experience. Who do you call?

The answers are on page 130.

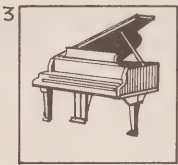
GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION: The Past Tense



I was a musician in Portugal.



What instruments did you play? [in Portugal]



I played piano and clarinet. [in Portugal]

4. **Was** is a past tense form of the verb **be**. **Played** is the past tense form of the verb **play**.
5. How to form the regular past tense form: add **ed** or **d** to the base form of the verb.

a. Base form: **play**

b. Base form: **live**

Past form: **play ed**

Past form: **live d**

6. Here are some more sentences in the past tense.

Lou Lou was born in China.
He lived in China until he was 27 years old.
He worked in Peking.

7. Some verbs have irregular past tense forms, for example:
- | | | | | |
|------------|------|------|------|-----|
| Base form: | go | have | come | eat |
| Past form: | went | had | came | ate |
- See page 131 for more examples.

Ana Ana was born in Chile.
She lived with her mother and father in Chile.
She came to Canada alone.

8. Tell about yourself:

You I _____
I _____
I _____

9. The plural ending **ed** or **d** is sometimes pronounced (t), for example:

a. help	helped
b. work	worked
c. like	liked
d. walk	walked
e. look	looked
f. touch	touched
g. watch	watched

10. The plural ending **ed** or **d** is sometimes pronounced (d) for example:

h. call	called
i. live	lived
j. play	played
k. turn	turned
l. spell	spelled
m. study	studied
n. try	tried

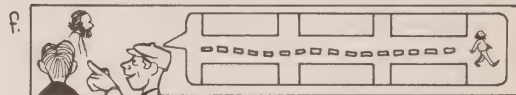
11. The plural ending **ed** is pronounced (id) after **t** or **d** for example:

o. repeat	repeated	q. want	wanted
p. visit	visited	r. need	needed

12. Last night Tony was very busy. What did he do last night?



He worked until 7:30



The answers are on page 130.

13. To make past tense questions with all verbs except **be**, put **Did** before the noun or pronoun. Use the base form of the verb.



14. Here are some statements and questions in the past.

a. She ate lunch.
Did she eat lunch?

Answers:

Yes/No. Yes she did/No she didn't.

b. I worked.
Did you work?

Yes/No. Yes I did/No I didn't.

15. Make questions in the past tense.



Did he work last night?



Did they eat at eight o'clock?



The answers are on page 130.

16. Find out how many people in your class watched television last night, and how many people went to bed after midnight.

PRONUNCIATION: Pronouns in Past Tense Questions

1. Did he is often pronounced (didē).

What instruments did he play?
Did he play the piano?

2. Did you is sometimes pronounced (didjü), (didjə), or (didyə).

What instruments did you play?
Did you play the clarinet?

3. Listen to each sentence
that the teacher says.

Which pronoun do you hear —
a, b or c. Write a, b or c.



he



she



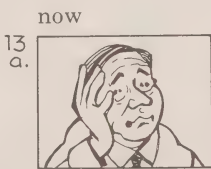
you



4. ____ 5. ____ 6. ____ 7. ____ 8. ____ 9. ____ 10. ____ 11. ____ 12. ____

PRONUNCIATION: The Past vs. The Present

Sometimes the past tense ending is difficult to hear.



He looks sick.



He looked sick.



I live on
Queen St.



I lived on
Queen St.



Listen to each sentence that the teacher says. Which do you hear,
a. the present tense, or b. the past tense? Write a or b.

15. ____ 16. ____ 17. ____ 18. ____ 19. ____ 20. ____ 21. ____ 22. ____ 23. ____

MAP OF CANADA

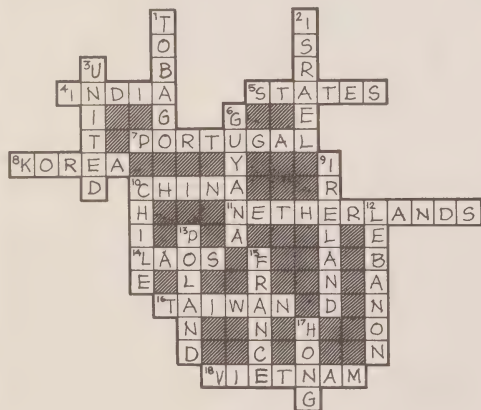


ANSWER KEY

Page 7

- | | |
|-------------|---------------------|
| 29 Chile | 17 Lebanon |
| 13 China | 23 Netherlands |
| 1 England | 26 Northern Ireland |
| 30 France | 20 Pakistan |
| 18 Germany | 8 Philippines |
| 22 Greece | 16 Poland |
| 9 Guyana | 7 Portugal |
| 6 Hong Kong | 11 Scotland |
| 5 India | 12 South Africa |
| 28 Iran | 25 Soviet Union |
| 24 Israel | 27 Taiwan |
| 10 Italy | 19 Trinidad-Tobago |
| 4 Jamaica | 2 United States |
| 14 Korea | 3 Vietnam |
| 15 Laos | 21 Yugoslavia |

Page 8



Page 10

- 2.E 3.D 4.A 5.F 6.B

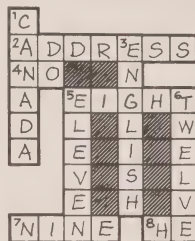
Page 13

- 3b. Do you have a dime?
c. Do you have a nickel?
d. Do you have a dollar?

Page 19

- 3d. I work on Queen Street.
e. Where do you live?
f. I live on Main Street.
g. Where do you work?
h. I work on College Street.

Page 20



Page 23

- Tony: 1. This is Lou.
2. Lou, this is Ana.
4. She's in my class.
Ana: 5. Nice to meet you.

Page 25

- 4b. He's from Sudbury.
c. She's from Ottawa.
d. He's from Quebec.
e. She's from Toronto.
f. He's from the United States.

Page 26

- | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 6c. ① 2 | d. 1 ② 3 | e. ① 2 |
| f. ① 2 | g. ① 2 | h. 1 ② 3 |
| i. ① 2 | j. 1 ② 3 | k. 1 ② 3 |

Page 27

- 3B. grandmother

3C. grandfather

3D. mother

3E. father

3G. brother
- 4A. son

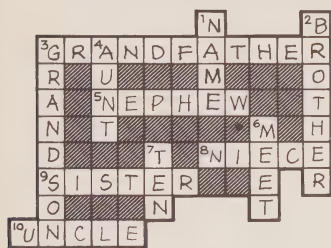
4C. husband

4D. daughter-in-law

4F. grandson

4G. grandson

Page 28



Page 29

- 2.B 3.A 4.E 5.C 6.G 7.F

Page 35

- c. 1 (2) 3

f. (1) 2 3

i. (1) 2
- d. (1) 2

g. 1 (2) 3 4

j. 1 (2) 3
- e. 1 (2) 3 4

h. 1 (2) 3 4

k. (1) 2

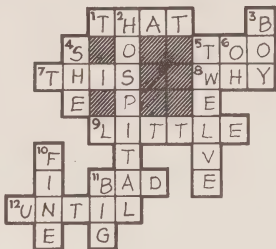
Page 39

Tony: 1. How's your little boy?
Lou: 3. He's still in the hospital.
Tony: 5. That's too bad.

Page 41

- 3b. I was at work last night.
c. She was at the hospital last night.
d. She was at work last night.
e. He was at work last night.
f. I was at the hospital last night.

Page 43



Page 51

- 4b. I live on King Street.
c. I have change.
d. I work on Main Street.
f. I don't live on King Street.
g. I don't have change.
h. I don't work on Main Street.

Page 52

- 2.b 3.h 4.d 5.c 6.f 7.a 8.g

Page 59

- c. (1) 2

f. (1) 2

i. (1) 2
- d. 1 (2)

g. (1) 2

j. (1) 2
- e. (1) 2

h. 1 (2)

k. (1) 2

ANSWER KEY

Page 60

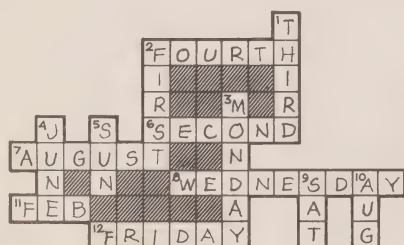
Here are some possible answers:

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| 2. English | 16. Polish |
| 3. Vietnamese | 17. Arabic |
| 4. English | 18. German |
| 5. Hindi, Punjabi | 19. English |
| 6. Chinese | 20. Urdu, Punjabi |
| 7. Portuguese | 21. Serbo-Croatian |
| 8. Tagalog | 22. Greek |
| 9. English | 23. Dutch |
| 10. Italian | 24. Hebrew |
| 11. English | 25. Russian |
| 12. Afrikaans, English | 26. English |
| 13. Chinese | 27. Chinese |
| 14. Korean | 28. Persian |
| 15. Lao | 29. Spanish |
| | 30. French |

Page 67

- 5c. He works until five-thirty.
 d. She works until six.
 f. He lives on King Street.
 g. He lives on Simcoe Street.
 h. She works on College Street.

Page 70



Page 73

3. No 4. Yes 5. 5C 6. 5A 7. No
 8. Yes 9. 5B 10. 5C 11. No

Page 75

- 5b. Does she live on Main Street?
 c. Does he work on Peter Street?
 d. Does he live on Queen Street?
 f. Does the bus go to College Street?
 g. Does the bus go to Queen Street?
 h. Does the bus go to King Street?

Page 78

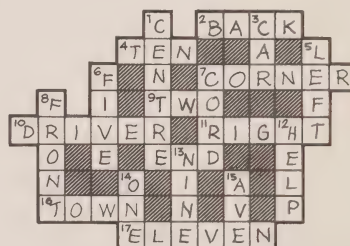
- 5c. Where does she live?
 d. Where does he work?
 e. Where does she work?
 f. Where do you live?

Page 80

- c. 1 ② 3 d. ① 2 e. 1 ② 3 4
 f. ① 2 3 g. 1 ② 3 4 h. 1 ② 3 4
 i. ① 2 j. 1 ② 3 k. ① 2

Page 81

- 2.A 3.E 4.B 5.F 6.D



Page 88

- c. the fourth floor
- d. the fourth floor
- e. the first floor
- f. the second floor
- g. the fifth floor
- h. the third floor
- i. the sixth floor
- j. the sixth floor
- k. the second floor
- l. the second floor

Page 89

- 4b. Where's the elevator?
- c. Where's the coffee-shop?
- d. Where's the telephone?
- f. What's your address?
- g. What's your postal code?
- h. What's your telephone number?

Page 91

- c. ① 2 3
- d. ① 2 3
- e. ① 2 3
- f. ① 2 3 4
- g. 1 ② 3 4
- h. ① 2 3
- i. ① 2 3 4
- j. ① 2 3
- k. ① 2 3 4 5

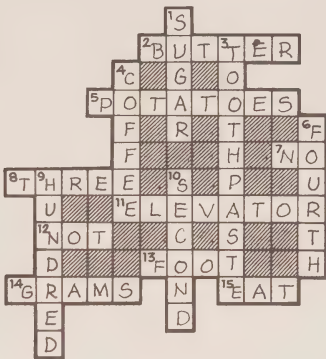
Page 96

- 6c. She likes coffee.
- d. She doesn't like tea.
- e. She likes milk.
- f. She doesn't like butter.
- g. He likes cereal.
- h. He doesn't like bread.

Page 97

- 9b. I don't have a pencil.
- c. He doesn't have change.
- d. She doesn't have a telephone.
- e. I don't have a watch.
- g. He doesn't work on King St.
- h. She doesn't work on Monday.
- i. I don't work on Main St.
- j. He doesn't work on Sunday.

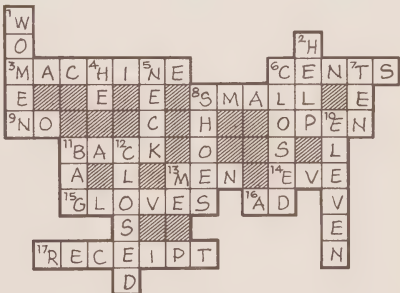
Page 99



Page 108

- b. Don't touch the telephone.
- c. Don't touch the dresses.
- d. Don't touch the gloves.
- e. Don't touch the clock.
- f. Don't touch the hats.
- g. Don't touch the pencils.
- h. Don't touch the coat.

Page 109



ANSWER KEY

Page 115

- 4b. Is she tired?
- c. Is the washroom one floor up?
- d. Is the library one floor down?
- f. Are you from Toronto?
- g. Are you tired?
- h. Are you from Ottawa?

Page 120

- 1. to Main Street TV
- 2. Brown's Electronics
- 3. a. Main Street TV
b. 999-8888
- 4. Brown's Electronics or
Main Street TV
- 5. Main Street TV
- 6. Brown's Electronics
- 7. Main Street TV

Page 122

- 12b. He ate at eight o'clock.
- c. He watched television.
- d. He played the piano.
- e. He played the clarinet.
- f. He walked three blocks.
- g. He visited friends.
- h. He called the hospital.

Page 123

- 16c. Did she watch television?
- d. Did you play the piano.
- e. Did she play the clarinet?
- f. Did he walk three blocks?
- g. Did they visit friends?
- h. Did you call the hospital?

APPENDIX

IRREGULAR VERBS

SIMPLE FORM

be	was, were
become	became
begin	began
bite	bit
blow	blew
break	broke
bring	brought
build	built
burn	burnt (burned)
buy	bought
catch	caught
choose	chose
come	came
cost	cost
cut	cut
do	did
draw	drew
dream	dreamt
drink	drank
drive	drove
eat	ate
fall	fell
feel	felt
fight	fought
find	found
fly	flew
forget	forgot
get	got
give	gave
go	went
grow	grew
hang	hung
have	had
hear	heard
hide	hid
hit	hit
hold	held
hurt	hurt
keep	kept
know	knew
lead	led
learn	learnt (learned)
leave	left

PAST FORM

SIMPLE FORM

lend	lent
let	let
lie	lay
lose	lost
make	made
mean	meant
meet	met
put	put
read	read
rid	rid
ride	rode
run	ran
say	said
see	saw
sell	sold
send	sent
set	set
shoot	shot
show	showed
sing	sang
sit	sat
sleep	slept
smell	smelt (smelled)
speak	spoke
spend	spent
spread	spread
stand	stood
steal	stole
stick	stuck
swim	swam
take	took
teach	taught
tear	tore
tell	told
think	thought
throw	threw
try	tried
understand	understood
wake	woke
wear	wore
win	won
write	wrote

PAST FORM

INTRODUCTION TO PART 2

In Part 2 you will find out more about Ana Pinto, Tony Faria, and the Wong family: Lou, Su Ping, Ken and David; and starting in Unit 23, they will be real people in photographs, instead of illustrations. You will also find the language and the activities in Part 2 more challenging.

Here are some of the contents in Part 2:

UNIT	TITLE OF UNIT	TITLE OF CONVERSATION OR PHOTO STORY
16	YOUR FIRST JOB	Ana's First Job
17	INSISTING ON SAFETY	Ana Insists on Safety
18	MAKING COMPLAINTS	Lou's Family in the Restaurant
19	CALLING IN TO REPORT ABSENCE	Ana Calls in Sick
20	DAYCARE FOR YOUR CHILD	Su Ping Calls a Daycare Centre
21	IN THE DRUGSTORE	Getting a Prescription Filled
22	SUBJECTS AT SCHOOL	A Parent-Teacher Interview
23	INVITATION	A Neighbour Invites Ana in for Coffee
24	SOCIAL VISIT	Ana and Her Neighbour
25	JOB UPGRADING	Ana Talks to Her Employer
26	UNEMPLOYMENT INSURANCE	Tony is Out of Work
27	LOOKING FOR WORK	Tony Looks for a Job
28	APPLYING FOR A JOB	Tony Gets a Job
29	IN THE DOCTOR'S OFFICE	Tony Gets His Medical
30	GETTING A MISTAKE CORRECTED	Ana's Pay Cheque is Wrong
31	LOOKING FOR A ROOM	Ana Has to Move
32	TAKING A TRIP	The McMichael Canadian Collection

*The Ontario Ministry of
Citizenship and Culture*

Susan Fish, Minister



Ontario Ministry
of Citizenship
and Culture

77 Bloor Street West
Toronto, Canada
M7A 2R9

ISBN-0-7743-9384-X

CA 20N
CI
-W 21



Welcome to Canadian English

A basic handbook
for students living
in Ontario
Part 1



Ontario

Ministry of Gerry Phillips
Citizenship Minister

Welcome to Canadian English

A basic handbook for
students living in Ontario

Part 1



Authors: Lillian Butovsky/Esther Podoliak



Credits

Assistance with editing, writing and
co-ordinating: John McHugh
Illustrations: Ken Gray, Advertising
Design: H. Bruce Dorland & Assoc.
Stamps on page 112 reproduced courtesy
of Canada Post Corporation.

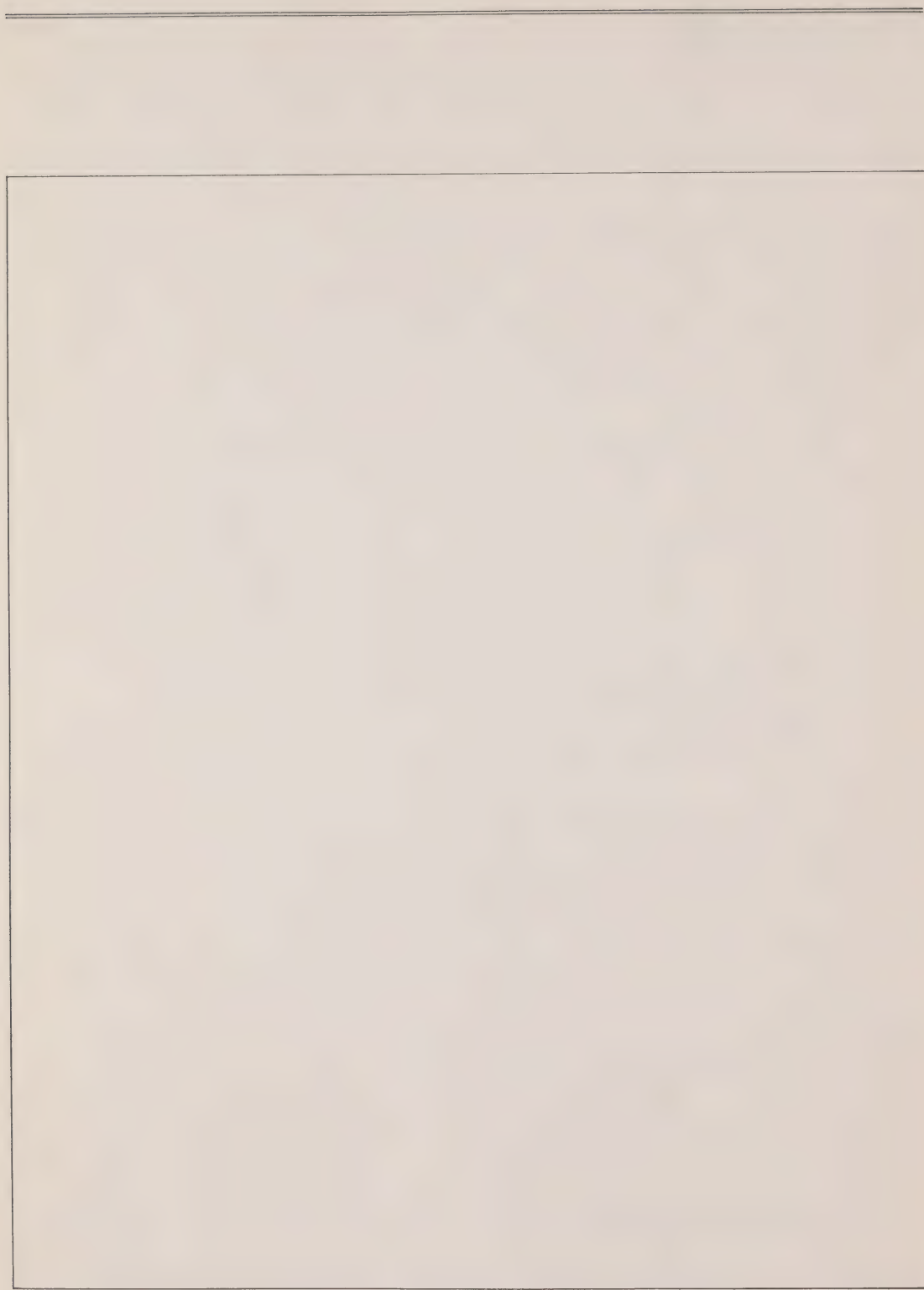
Published by the
Ministry of Citizenship.
Funded by the Federal Department
of the Secretary of State.
Printed by the Queen's Printer
for Ontario
Province of Ontario
Toronto, Canada.

© 1984 Government of Ontario
Rep. 1989

Copies available from the
Ontario Government Bookstore,
880 Bay St., Toronto
for personal shopping.
Out-of-town customers write to
Publications Services Section,
5th Floor, 880 Bay St., Toronto, Ontario,
M7A 1N8. Telephone 965-6015.
Toll free long distance 1-800-268-7540;
in Northwestern Ontario 0-Zenith 67200.

CONTENTS

	Page
UNIT 1: SELF-INTRODUCTIONS	1
UNIT 2: GETTING CHANGE	9
UNIT 3: PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION	15
UNIT 4: INTRODUCTION OF OTHERS	21
UNIT 5: EMERGENCIES	30
UNIT 6: SAYING HOW YOU FEEL	36
UNIT 7: TELLING THE TIME	45
UNIT 8: GETTING HELP WITH ENGLISH	53
UNIT 9: TALKING ABOUT CALENDAR TIME	61
UNIT 10: FINDING YOUR WAY AROUND	71
UNIT 11: GETTING DIRECTIONS INSIDE	82
UNIT 12: SHOPPING FOR GROCERIES	92
UNIT 13: SHOPPING FOR CLOTHES	100
UNIT 14: IN THE POST OFFICE	110
UNIT 15: OCCUPATIONS	117
MAP OF CANADA	125
ANSWER KEY	127
APPENDIX: IRREGULAR VERBS	131
INTRODUCTION TO PART 2	132

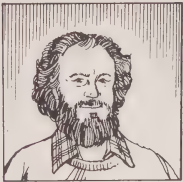


UNIT 1: SELF-INTRODUCTIONS

CONVERSATION: Tony Meets Ana



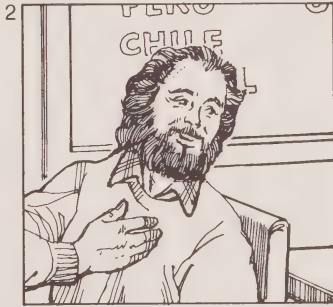
Ana



Tony



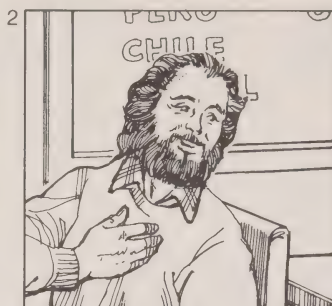
First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Hello.



I'm Tony.



I'm Ana.



Nice to meet you.



Where are you from?



Chile.

Other Sentences You May Hear

You can say the same thing in more than one way. For example, in Picture 1, Tony can say "Hi" instead of "Hello." Here are some other examples.

Picture 2: My name is Tony.

Picture 3: My name is Ana.

Picture 4: Glad to meet you.

Picture 5: What country are you from?

THE ENGLISH ALPHABET

There are 26 letters in English. Learn to spell your name in English.

Printed in Books			Printed by Hand		Written	
	Capital	Small	Capital	Small	Capital	Small
1.	A	a	A	a	<i>A</i>	<i>a</i>
2.	B	b	B	b	<i>B</i>	<i>b</i>
3.	C	c	C	c	<i>C</i>	<i>c</i>
4.	D	d	D	d	<i>D</i>	<i>d</i>
5.	E	e	E	e	<i>E</i>	<i>e</i>
6.	F	f	F	f	<i>F</i>	<i>f</i>
7.	G	g	G	g	<i>G</i>	<i>g</i>
8.	H	h	H	h	<i>H</i>	<i>h</i>
9.	I	i	I	i	<i>I</i>	<i>i</i>
10.	J	j	J	j	<i>J</i>	<i>j</i>
11.	K	k	K	k	<i>K</i>	<i>k</i>
12.	L	l	L	l	<i>L</i>	<i>l</i>
13.	M	m	M	m	<i>M</i>	<i>m</i>
14.	N	n	N	n	<i>N</i>	<i>n</i>
15.	O	o	O	o	<i>O</i>	<i>o</i>
16.	P	p	P	p	<i>P</i>	<i>p</i>
17.	Q	q	Q	q	<i>Q</i>	<i>q</i>
18.	R	r	R	r	<i>R</i>	<i>r</i>
19.	S	s	S	s	<i>S</i>	<i>s</i>
20.	T	t	T	t	<i>T</i>	<i>t</i>
21.	U	u	U	u	<i>U</i>	<i>u</i>
22.	V	v	V	v	<i>V</i>	<i>v</i>
23.	W	w	W	w	<i>W</i>	<i>w</i>
24.	X	x	X	x	<i>X</i>	<i>x</i>
25.	Y	y	Y	y	<i>Y</i>	<i>y</i>
26.	Z	z	Z	z	<i>Z</i>	<i>z</i>



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

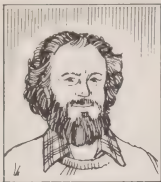
Ask some people in your class what their names are. You can say:
 What's your name?
 Please spell it. (or Please write it.)



Write each name in your notebook.

READING AND WRITING: Names and Titles on a Form

Here is Tony's name.



A	<u>Tony</u> First name	<u>José</u> Middle name	<u>Faria</u> Last name
---	---------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------

Here is Ana's name.



B	<u>Ana</u> First name or Given name	<u>Sara</u> Middle name or Given name	<u>Pinto</u> Last name or Family name or Surname
---	---	---	---

Here are more
names from
different
countries.

C	First name	Middle name	Family name
	1. Nam	Thi	Nguyen
	2. Peter		Kowalski
	3. Samuel	Americo	Rodriguez
	4. Yung Chiang		Su
	5. Inder Pal		Sagoo



Fill this form
out. Use your
own name.

D	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
	First name	Middle name	Last or Family name.

Here is Tony's
name again, in
block letters.

E	PRINT IN BLOCK LETTERS												
	FAMILY OR LAST NAME	F	A	R	I	A							
	FIRST AND MIDDLE NAME	T	O	N	Y		J	O	S	É			



Fill this form
out. Use your
own name.

F	PRINT IN BLOCK LETTERS												
	FAMILY OR LAST NAME												
	FIRST AND MIDDLE NAME												

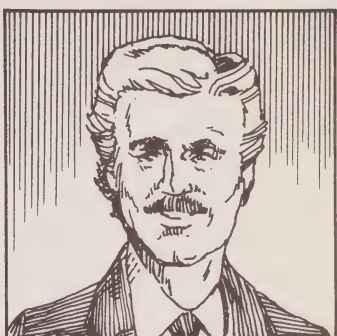
This is Ana's family.



This is Ana Pinto. This is Miss Pinto or Ms. Pinto.



This is Ana's mother, Gladys Pinto. This is Mrs. Pinto or Ms. Pinto.



This is Ana's father, Ricardo Pinto. This is Mr. Pinto.

Learn these titles.

- Mr. is pronounced Mister.
- Mrs. is pronounced Missuz.
- Miss is pronounced Miss.
- Ms. is pronounced Miz.

Here is Ana's name and title on a form.

A	Surname (family name)										Please print										Initials	<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Ms.			
	P	I	N	T	O												A	S							



Fill this form out for yourself.

B	Surname (family name)										Please print										Initials	<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Ms.			

GRAMMAR: The Verb Be



I'm Tony

Long form
(for formal writing)

I am Tony.

Short form
(for speaking and
informal writing)

I'm Tony.

The short form: what happens

I am

I am

I'm

I'm

"I" is a personal
pronoun.

I

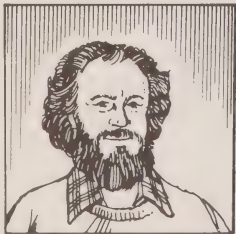
"Am" is a form
of the verb be.

am

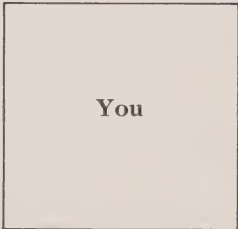
Pronoun and
verb together:

I am

I'm



I'm Tony.
I'm from Portugal.



You

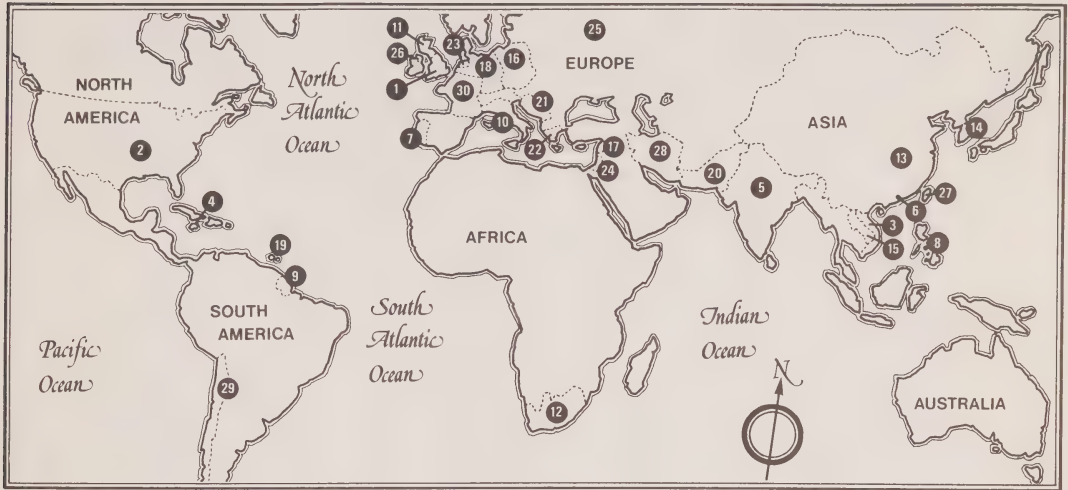
Tell about yourself.



I'm Ana.
I'm from Chile.



EXTRA STUDY: Immigration to Ontario



People come to Ontario from many countries. The numbers on the map are the 30 places that most immigrants came from in the years 1977 to 1981. Below are the names of the places. Match the number to the name and put the number in the box. The lower the number, the higher the immigration. For example, 32,788 immigrants came from country number 1 (England), and 1,539 immigrants came from number 30 (France).

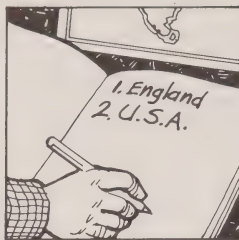
<input type="text" value="29"/> Chile	<input type="text"/> Israel	<input type="text"/> Poland
<input type="text"/> China	<input type="text"/> Italy	<input type="text"/> Portugal
<input type="text"/> England	<input type="text"/> Jamaica	<input type="text"/> Scotland
<input type="text"/> France	<input type="text"/> Korea	<input type="text"/> South Africa
<input type="text"/> Germany	<input type="text"/> Laos	<input type="text"/> Soviet Union
<input type="text"/> Greece	<input type="text"/> Lebanon	<input type="text"/> Taiwan
<input type="text"/> Guyana	<input type="text"/> Netherlands	<input type="text"/> Trinidad-Tobago
<input type="text"/> Hong Kong	<input type="text"/> Northern Ireland	<input type="text"/> United States
<input type="text"/> India	<input type="text"/> Pakistan	<input type="text"/> Vietnam
<input type="text"/> Iran	<input type="text"/> Philippines	<input type="text"/> Yugoslavia

The answers are on page 126.

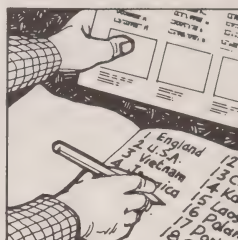
Spelling Practice



Look at the map on page 7. Write each number in your notebook.



Beside each number, write the name of the country.



Look at the names on page 7. Correct your spelling.

Examples:

1. England
2. U.S.A.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Look on page 7, if necessary.

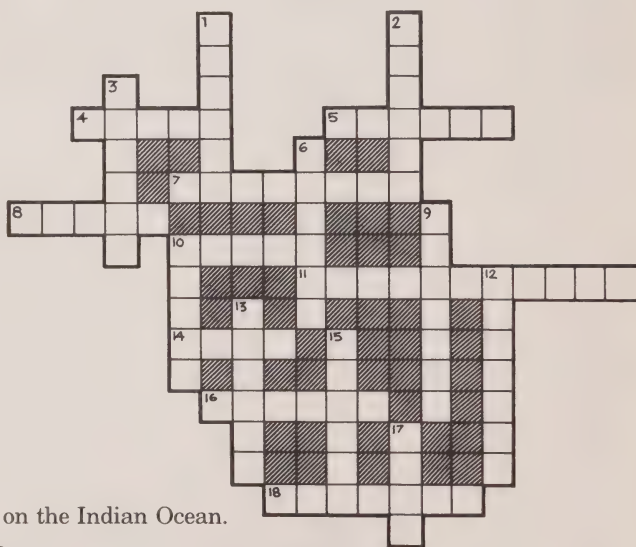
Down

1. Trinidad- ____
2. A country in the Middle East.
3. ____ States.
6. A country in South America.
9. Northern ____
10. Another country in South America.
12. A country on the Mediterranean Sea.
13. A country East of Germany.
15. A country in Europe famous for cuisine.
17. ____ Kong.

Across

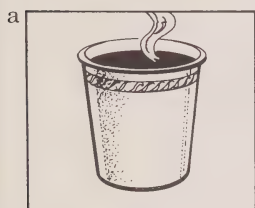
4. A country on the Indian Ocean.
5. United ____
7. A country on the Atlantic Ocean, west of Spain.
8. A country near Japan.
10. A large country in Asia.
11. A country in Europe on the North Sea.
14. A country in Asia between Thailand and Vietnam.
16. A country near Hong Kong.
18. A country on the South China Sea.

The answers are on page 126.

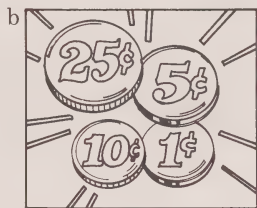


UNIT 2: GETTING CHANGE

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



coffee

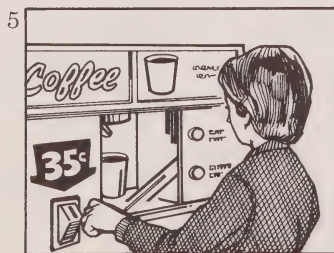


change

CONVERSATION: Ana Asks for Change



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Do you have change?



Yes. Here.



Thank you.



You're welcome.










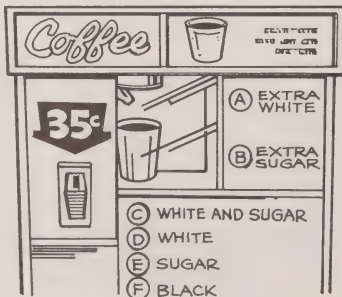
Other Sentences You May Hear








- Picture 1: Can you give me change?
Can you give me change for a dollar?
Can you change a dollar?
Picture 2: Yes. Here you are.
Picture 3: Thanks. (INFORMAL)

READING: Coffee Machine

Which buttons do you press on the coffee machine?
Match the word(s) to the picture and put the letter in the box.

- 1 C  +  + 
- 2  + 
- 3  + 

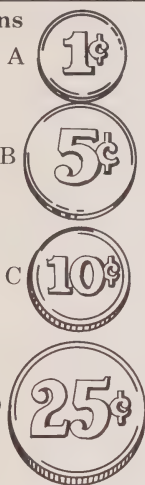


- 4  +  + 
- 5 
- 6  +  + 

The answers are on page 126.

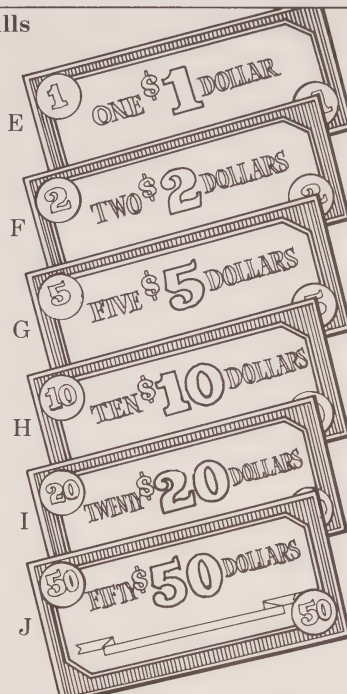
VOCABULARY: Coins and Bills

Coins



- A. a cent or a penny
- B. a nickel
- C. a dime
- D. a quarter
- E. a dollar bill
- F. a two-dollar bill
- G. a five-dollar bill
- H. a ten-dollar bill
- I. a twenty-dollar bill
- J. a fifty-dollar bill

Bills



COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Getting Change

Ask other people in the class for change. You can say:
Do you have change for (a dollar)?

The other person answers:

Yes. Here. or **No. I'm sorry. I don't.**

NUMBERS: Zero to One Hundred

A. Numbers Zero to Thirty-Nine

0 Zero	10 Ten	20 Twenty	30 Thirty
1 One	11 Eleven	21 Twenty-one	31 Thirty-one
2 Two	12 Twelve	22 Twenty-two	32 Thirty-two
3 Three	13 Thirteen	23 Twenty-three	33 Thirty-three
4 Four	14 Fourteen	24 Twenty-four	34 Thirty-four
5 Five	15 Fifteen	25 Twenty-five	35 Thirty-five
6 Six	16 Sixteen	26 Twenty-six	36 Thirty-six
7 Seven	17 Seventeen	27 Twenty-seven	37 Thirty-seven
8 Eight	18 Eighteen	28 Twenty-eight	38 Thirty-eight
9 Nine	19 Nineteen	29 Twenty-nine	39 Thirty-nine


B. Numbers Forty to One Hundred

40 Forty	50 Fifty	60 Sixty	70 Seventy
80 Eighty	90 Ninety	100 One Hundred	

PRONUNCIATION

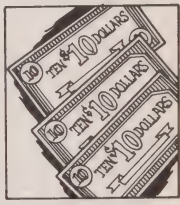
13 and 30 sound almost the same. Listen. Which do you hear, a or b? Write a or b.

a



\$13.00

b



\$30.00



1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

If you don't know whether someone is saying 13 or 30, ask:
Is that **one three** or **three zero**?

GRAMMAR: Questions with Do

1. Ana is asking a question.



Do you have change?

2. This is how you make a question.

a. Take the words

you have change

b. Add the word do.



you have change ?

3. Make questions.



Do you have a quarter ?







The answers are on page 126.

EXTRA STUDY: Writing Cheques



Ana bought a book at Black's Bookstore for \$11.95. Here is the cheque she wrote.

THE BANK OF BELLEVILLE
109 WATER STREET

PAY TO THE ORDER OF

Feb. 11 1984

Black's Bookstore

\$ 11.95

Eleven ⁹⁵/₁₀₀ DOLLARS

RE 16501

Ana Pinto

B You bought a book at Black's Bookstore for \$8.00. Complete this cheque.

THE BANK OF BELLEVILLE
109 WATER STREET

PAY TO THE ORDER OF

Feb. 25 1984

\$

DOLLARS

RE 15942

Write these amounts

C \$18.95

Black's Bookstore

\$

DOLLARS

D \$22.00

Black's Bookstore

\$

DOLLARS

E \$42.50

Black's Bookstore


\$

DOLLARS


Check your spelling of the amounts on page 12.

UNIT 3: PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION


VOCABULARY: For the Conversation

a


(to) work

b


(to) work

c

Ana lives at 21 King St.
Betty lives at 23.


d


number

e

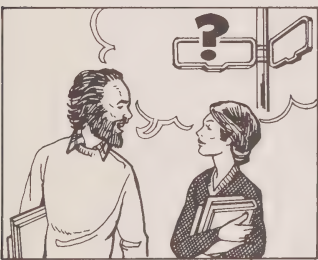
King Street


CONVERSATION: Walking Home


f


g


First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.


1

2

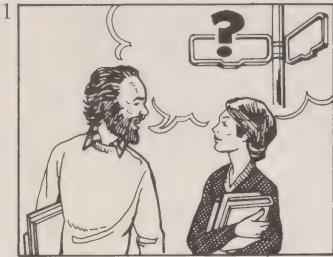
3

4

5

6

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Where do you live?



On King Street.



Really? I work on King Street.



What number?



Forty.



I live at number twenty-one.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: What street do you live on?
Picture 3: I have a job on King Street.
I'm working on King Street.

PRONUNCIATION

I. **Walk** and **work** sound almost the same.
Listen. Which do you hear, a or b?



I walk
on King St.



I work
on King St.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

II. **14** and **40** sound almost the same.
Listen. Which do you hear, a or b?



14 King Street



40 King Street

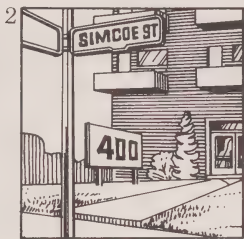
1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

If people don't hear you, say each digit separately:
14 **one four** 40 **four zero**

READING AND WRITING: Addresses



Ana lives in a house at 21 King Street.



Tony lives in an apartment building at 400 Simcoe Street.

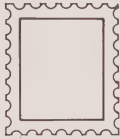


Tony's apartment number is 3.

Where do you live, in a house or an apartment? _____

Tony received a letter from his friend Samuel. This is the envelope.

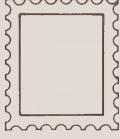
Samuel A. Rodriguez
715 Main St.
Collingwood, Ont.
L9Y 1X0



Mr. Tony J. Faria
400 Simcoe St. East
Apt 3
Toronto, Ontario
M4K 2G2

1. first name
2. initial
3. last name
4. street
5. apartment number
6. city or town
7. province
8. postal code
9. return address

You have written a letter to Tony. Write the envelope for it.
Use your own return address.



Tony filled out these forms.

A

PLEASE PRINT ☒ Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Miss ☐ Ms.

Tony	J.	Faria
First Name	Initial	Last Name
400	Simcoe St. E.	3
Number	Street	Apt. Number
Toronto		Ontario
City or Town		Province
		M4K 2G2
		Postal Code

B

PLEASE PRINT ☒ Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Miss ☐ Ms.

NAME	Tony J. Faria
ADDRESS	400 Simcoe St. E., Apt. 3
CITY AND PROVINCE	Toronto, Ontario
POSTAL CODE	M4K 2G2

Fill out these forms with information about yourself.

C

PLEASE PRINT ☐ Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Miss ☐ Ms.

First Name	Initial	Last Name
Number	Street	Apt. Number
City or Town		Province
		Postal Code

D

PLEASE PRINT ☐ Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Miss ☐ Ms.

NAME	
ADDRESS	
CITY AND PROVINCE	
POSTAL CODE	



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people their name and where they live. You can say:

What's your name? Where do you live, in a house or apartment?

Write each name here and check (✓) house or apartment.

Name	House	Apartment	Name	House	Apartment
Ana	✓				
Tony		✓			

GRAMMAR: Questions with Where

1. Tony is asking a question.



Where do you live?

2. There are two kinds of questions.

Yes or no questions:	Do Do	you you	have change? work on King St.?	Answers: Yes <u>or</u> No
Question-word questions: Where Where	do do	you you	live? work?	Answers: <u>on Simcoe St.</u> <u>on King St.</u>

3. Make question-word questions.



Where do you live ?



Where do you work ?





Make statements.



I live on King Street.







The answers are on page 126.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Look in the dictionary, if necessary.

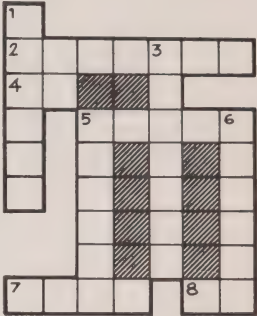
Down

- 1. The name of this country.
- 3. The language you are learning.
- 5. The number after ten.
- 6. The number after eleven.

Across

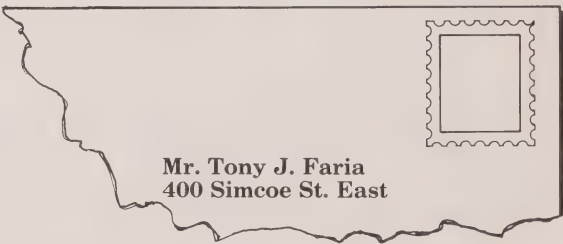
- 2. The number and name of your street is your ____.
- 4. The opposite of "yes."
- 5. The number before nine.
- 7. The number before ten.
- 8. "She" is a feminine pronoun.
____ is a masculine pronoun.

The answers are on page 126.



EXTRA STUDY: Kinds of Streets and Abbreviations

Tony lives on Simcoe Street. "St." is the abbreviation for "Street." We use the abbreviation when we write an address.



Here are kinds of streets.



A. Street
or
B. Road



C. Avenue
or
D. Boulevard



E. Crescent



F. Court
or
G. Square

Here are the abbreviations. Match the kind of street to the abbreviation.

- | | | |
|---|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> D Blvd. | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> St. | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> Rd. |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Sq. | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Ave. | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Cres. |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Crt. | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> R.R. | |



H. Rural Route

UNIT 4: INTRODUCTION OF OTHERS

CONVERSATION: Ana Meets Lou



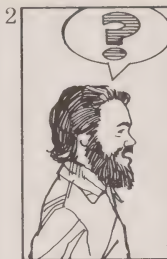
First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Hello Ana.



How are you?



Fine thanks.



How are you?



Fine.



This is Lou.



Lou, this is Ana.



Nice to meet you.



Oh.



I'm sorry.



That's okay.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 7: Lou, I'd like you to meet Ana.

Picture 8: Glad to meet you.

Pleased to meet you.

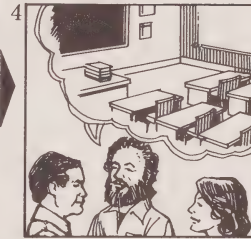
Hi. (INFORMAL)

Hello.

Picture 11: That's all right.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES: Introducing Others

Make two conversations.



1. This is Lou.

2. Lou, this is Ana.

3. She's from Chile.

4. She's in my class.

5. Nice to meet you.

Here is one conversation from the Extension.

Tony: 1. This is Lou.

2. Lou, this is Ana.

3. She's from Chile.

Ana: 5. Nice to meet you.

Look at the Extension and write another conversation in your notebook.
The second conversation is on page 126.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Photos From Home

Bring a photograph of someone to class. Tell who that person is and say one thing about him or her, for example:

This is my friend.

She's from Laos.

This is Albert Einstein.

He's a famous scientist.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Social Insurance Number



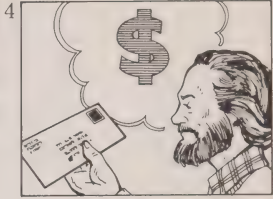
Tony has a social insurance card.



His social insurance number (SIN) is on the card.



He needs the number to work.



He needs the number for unemployment insurance.



Lou has a social insurance number, too.

READING AND WRITING:
Application for a Social Insurance Number

Lou got his application for a social insurance card at a Canada Employment Centre. Here is part of the form.

1	FIRST NAME Hsi An (Lou)	MIDDLE NAME	PRESENT FAMILY NAME (SURNAME) Wong
2	DATE OF BIRTH DAY MONTH YEAR 3 8 44 DO NOT WRITE HERE	3	4 SEX MALE <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FEMALE <input type="checkbox"/>
5	PLACE OF BIRTH Canton, China	6 SURNAME AT BIRTH Wong	7
8	FATHER'S FIRST NAME Wu Liu	9 HAVE YOU EVER BEFORE APPLIED FOR OR RECEIVED A SOCIAL INSURANCE NUMBER YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10 IF YES WRITE YOUR NUMBER HERE DON'T KNOW <input type="checkbox"/>
11	DATE 2/4/75	12 MARITAL STATUS SINGLE <input type="checkbox"/> MARRIED <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>	13 STATUS IN CANADA CANADIAN CITIZEN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PERMANENT RESIDENT <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>
14	APPLICANT'S WRITTEN SIGNATURE Lou Wong		

Fill this out with information about yourself.

1	FIRST NAME	MIDDLE NAME	PRESENT FAMILY NAME (SURNAME)
2	DATE OF BIRTH DAY MONTH YEAR DO NOT WRITE HERE	3	4 SEX MALE <input type="checkbox"/> FEMALE <input type="checkbox"/>
5	PLACE OF BIRTH	6 SURNAME AT BIRTH	7
8	FATHER'S FIRST NAME	9 HAVE YOU EVER BEFORE APPLIED FOR OR RECEIVED A SOCIAL INSURANCE NUMBER YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/>	10 IF YES WRITE YOUR NUMBER HERE DON'T KNOW <input type="checkbox"/>
11	DATE	12 MARITAL STATUS SINGLE <input type="checkbox"/> MARRIED <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>	13 STATUS IN CANADA CANADIAN CITIZEN <input type="checkbox"/> PERMANENT RESIDENT <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>
14	APPLICANT'S WRITTEN SIGNATURE		

GRAMMAR: The Verb Be



Long form
(for formal writing)

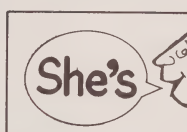
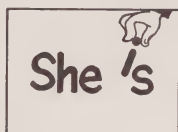
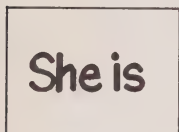
She is from Chile.

Short form
(for speaking and
informal writing)

She's from Chile.

She's from Chile.

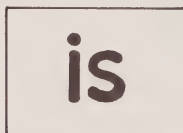
2 The short form: what happens



3 She and he
are personal pronouns.



Is is a form of
the verb be.



Pronoun
and verb together:

She is

She's

He is

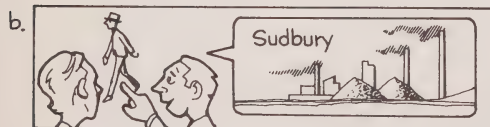
He's

4 Make sentences.



She's from Chile.







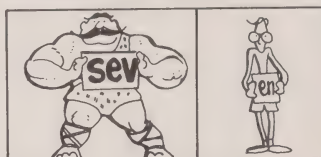
The answers are on page 126.

PRONUNCIATION

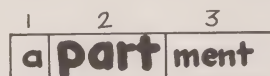
1. Look at this word. It has two parts. The parts are called syllables.



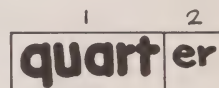
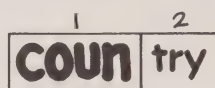
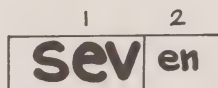
2. The first part or syllable is strong. We say it louder.



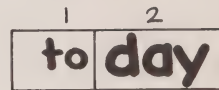
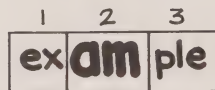
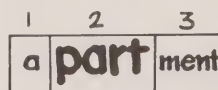
3. Look at this word. It has three syllables. The second syllable is strong. We say it louder.



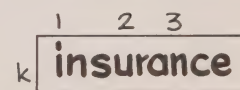
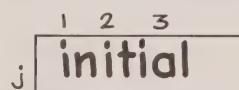
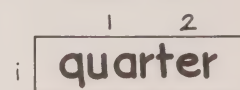
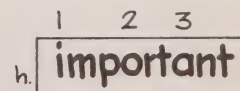
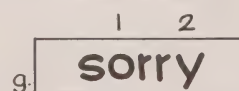
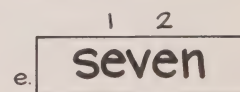
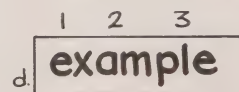
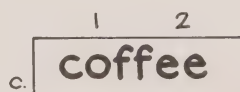
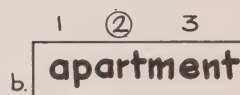
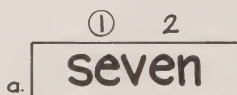
4. The first syllable of these words is strong:



5. The second syllable of these words is strong:



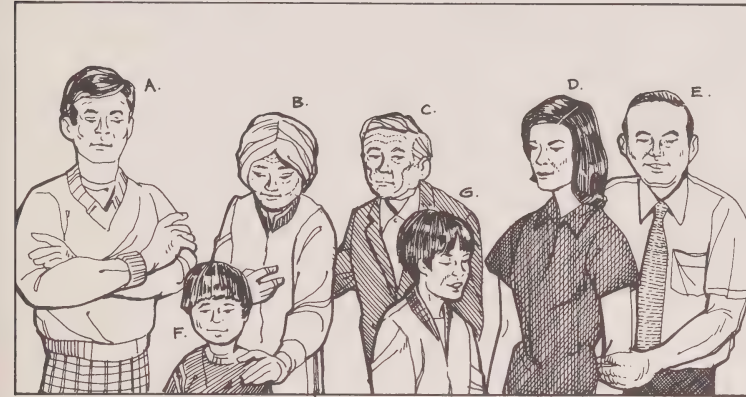
6. Listen to these words. Circle the number of the strong syllable.



The answers are on page 126.

EXTRA STUDY: The Family

This is Lou's family.



1. I'm Lou.



- A is my brother.
- B is my mother.
- C is my father.
- D is my wife.
- F is my son.
- G is my son.

2. I'm Lou's brother.



- G is my nephew.
- F is my nephew.
- D is my sister-in-law.

Complete these sentences.

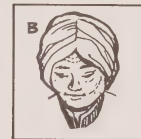
3. I'm Lou's son.



- A is my uncle
- B is my _____
- C is my _____
- D is my _____
- E is my _____
- G is my _____

grandfather
mother
father
grandmother
uncle
brother

4. I'm Lou's mother.

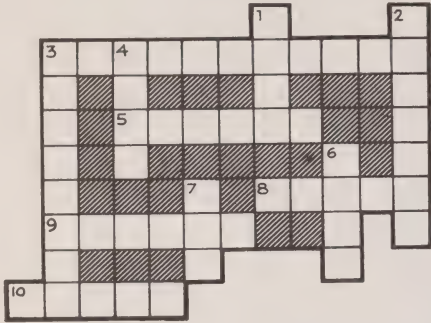


- A is my _____
- C is my _____
- D is my _____
- F is my _____
- G is my _____

daughter-in-law
husband
son
grandson
grandson

The answers are on page 127.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle



Down

1. My ___ is Ana.
2. This person (male) has the same mother and father as you.
3. Son of your son or daughter.
4. Sister of your mother or father.
6. Nice to ___ you.
7. The number after nine.

Across

3. Father of your father or mother.
5. Son of your brother or sister.
8. Daughter of your brother or sister.
9. This person (female) has the same mother and father as you.
10. Brother of your mother or father.

The answers are on page 127.

EXTRA STUDY: Two-line Dialogues

Complete each dialogue.

- 1 I'm Ana.
 Nice to meet you.
- 2 Where are you from?
- 3 Do you have change for a dollar?
- 4 Where do you live?
- 5 How are you?
- 6 Your address please?
- 7 Your telephone number?

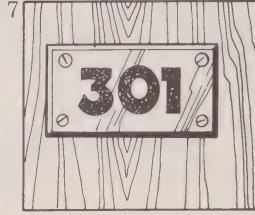
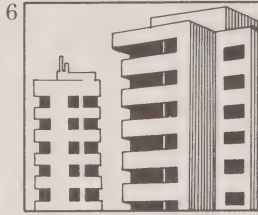
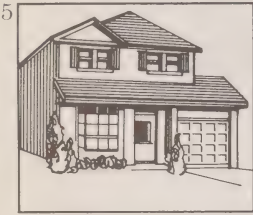
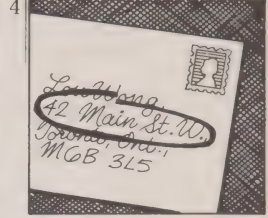
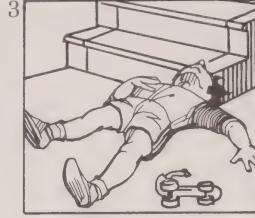
Choose from these sentences.

- A. Yes. Here.
- B. Chile.
- C. Fine thanks.
- D. Nice to meet you.
- E. On King St.
- F. 751-2632.
- G. 42 Main St. West.

The answers are on page 127.

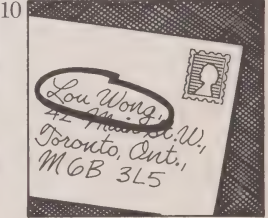
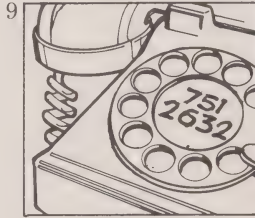
UNIT 5: EMERGENCIES

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation

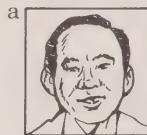


1. ambulance
2. boy
3. hurt
4. address
5. house

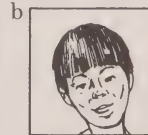
6. apartment
7. number
8. apartment number
9. telephone number
10. name



CONVERSATION: Lou Calls Emergency



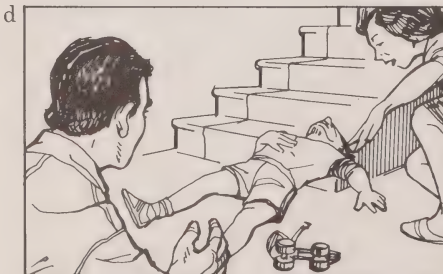
Lou



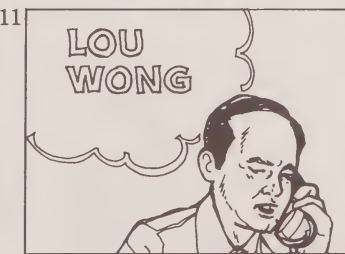
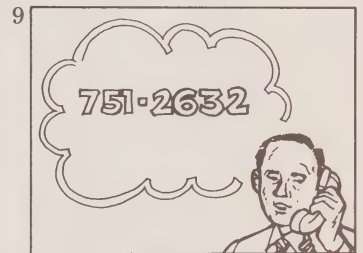
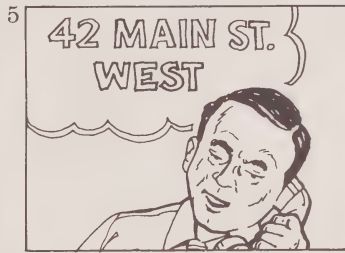
Ken



Su Ping



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Emergency.



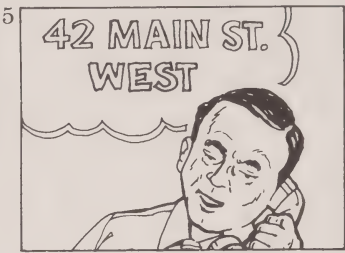
Ambulance, please.



My boy is hurt.



Your address please?



42 Main Street West.



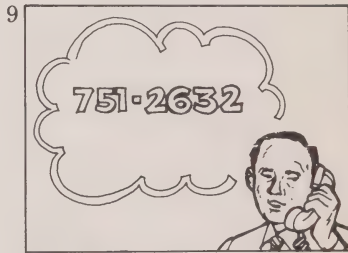
House or apartment?



Apartment, number 301.



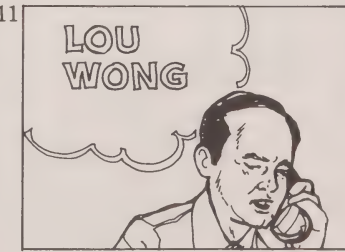
Your telephone number?



751-2632.



And your name?



Lou Wong.



Fine.

Other Questions Policeman May Ask

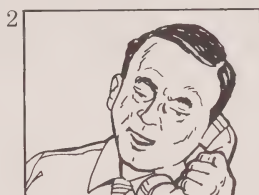
What language do you speak? What's the nearest major intersection? What municipality is that?

SPELLING

Can you spell your name and your street name in English?
This is important.



Please spell your address.



M-A-I-N.

Some alphabet letters are difficult to hear. We use familiar words to help people hear the correct letter.



Please spell it again.



M for Monday -A-I-N.

SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people in your class to spell their name and the name of their street. You can say:

Please spell your name.

Please spell the name of your street.

Write each name and the name of the street here. Then show it to the person. Is it correct?

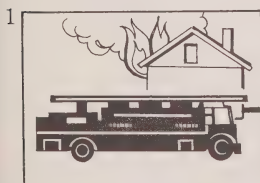
Ana

King Street

Continue in your notebook.

EMERGENCY TELEPHONE NUMBERS

Write the emergency numbers for your local area. They are in the front of your telephone book.



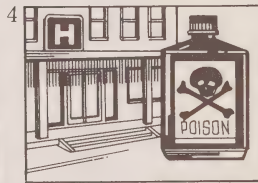
Fire Department



Ambulance



Police



Poison Information Centre

USEFUL INFORMATION: If Your Child Swallows Poison



Your child swallows poison.



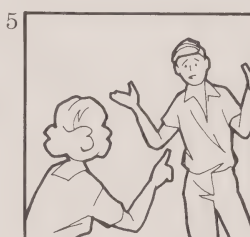
If someone in your house speaks English,



ask that person to call the Poison Information Centre.



That person will get important information.



If no one in your house speaks English,



call an ambulance.



Take your child AND the poison container.



The ambulance will take you to the Emergency Department of the nearest hospital.



Show the poison container.

For more useful information, read "Newcomers Guide to Services in Ontario." This booklet is free and comes in different languages. It is published by the Ministry of Citizenship and Culture. For information or help, go to an immigrant aid agency. Look in your telephone directory under the name of your nationality, for example "Italian" or "Vietnamese."

USEFUL INFORMATION: The Fire Department



You call the fire department



if you have a fire



or a gas leak



or if someone is stuck.

PRONUNCIATION

Here are the names of streets you can find in some Ontario cities. Listen to each name and circle the number of the strong syllable.

a. ^{① 2} Hur on St.

b. ^{1 ② 3 4} On tar i o Ave.

c. ^{1 2 3} Mc Ken zie St.

d. ^{1 2} Sim coe St.

e. ^{1 2 3 4} Ni a gara Ave.

f. ^{1 2 3} Av e nue Rd.

g. ^{1 2 3 4} Vic tor i a Ave.

h. ^{1 2 3 4} E liz a beth St.

i. ^{1 2} Riv er St.

j. ^{1 2 3} Mac Don ald St.

k. ^{1 2} Col lege St.

The answers are on page 127.

Write the name of the street you live on. _____

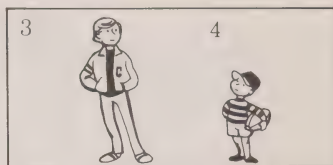
Write the name of the street your school is on. _____

Write the name of two or three streets you use when you come to school. _____

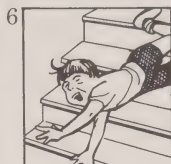
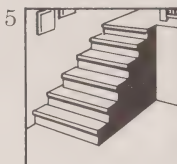
In each street name, show the strongest syllable. Ask your teacher to help you.

UNIT 6: SAYING HOW YOU FEEL

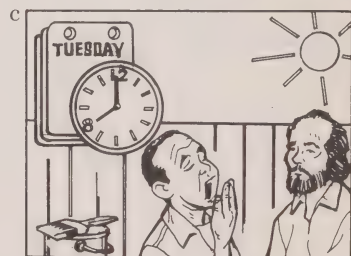
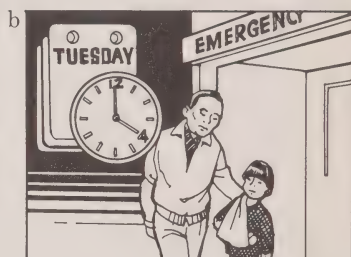
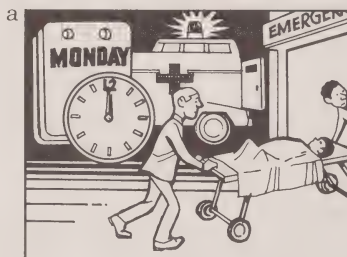
VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



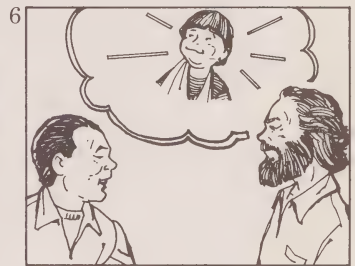
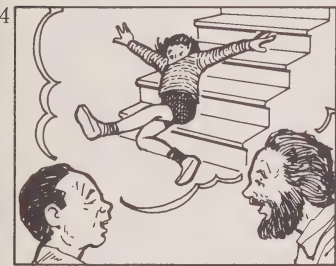
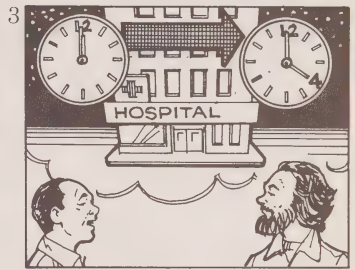
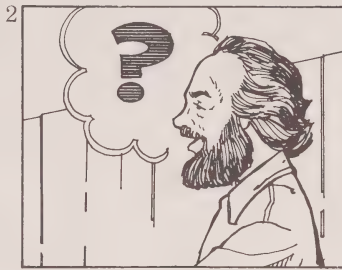
1. tired
2. hospital
3. big
4. little
5. stairs
6. fall down
7. fine



CONVERSATION: Lou is Tired



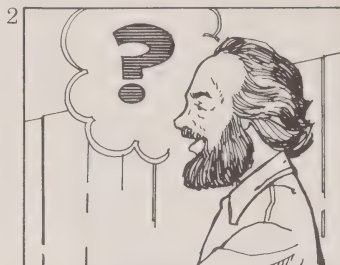
First, look at ALL the pictures.
Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



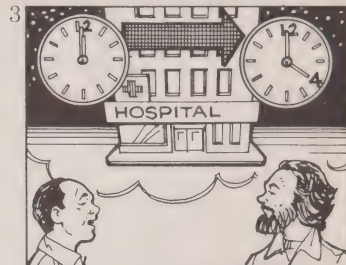
WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



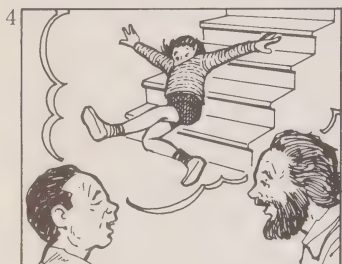
I'm tired.



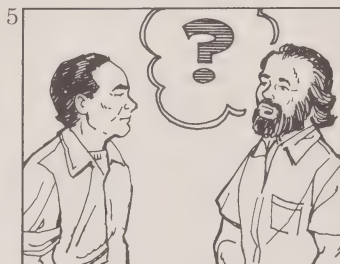
Oh! Why?



I was at the hospital until four.



My little boy fell down the stairs.



How is he now?



He's fine.



That's good.

Other Sentences You May Hear

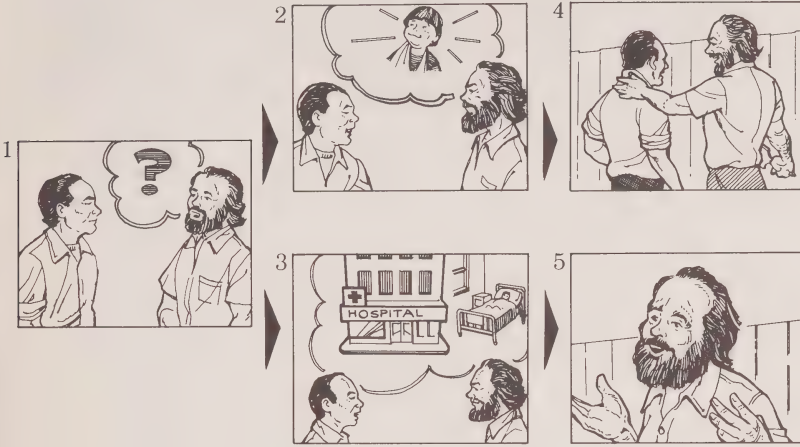
Picture 2: Oh! How come? (INFORMAL)

Picture 5: How's he doing now?

Picture 7: I'm glad.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES

Make two conversations.



1. How's your little boy?

2. He's fine.

4. That's good.

3. He's still in the hospital.

5. That's too bad.

Here is one conversation from the Extension.

Tony: 1. How's your little boy?

Lou: 2. He's fine.

Tony: 4. That's good.



Look at the Extension and write the other conversation in your notebook.

The second conversation is on page 127.

READING AND WRITING: Ontario Health Insurance Plan



Lou has an OHIP card. It has a number on it.



At the hospital Lou gave this number.



OHIP helps pay the hospital and doctor bills.



OHIP doesn't pay for dental care, except in hospitals.

Lou filled out an application for OHIP. Here are parts of the form.

1	Surname (family name) Please print		Initials	<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Ms	
	W O N G		H A	Insert the name by which you are known e.g. Tom, Vera, etc.	
	Street address		L O U		
	4 2 M A I N S T R E E		Telephone Number - 7 5 1 - 2 6 3 2		
Apt. no.		Name of City/Town, etc.		Date of Birth	
3 0 1 1		T O R O N T O		Day 3 Month 18 Year 4 4	
Province		Postal code		Marital status	
O N T A R I O		M 3 Q 4 M 4		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed	
Name of present employer		Previous OHIP no. (if any)		<input type="checkbox"/> Single <input type="checkbox"/> Separated <input type="checkbox"/> Other	
S E L F - E M P L O Y E D					
2 Insurable status <input type="checkbox"/> Single premium I have no eligible dependent(s). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Family premium I have eligible dependent(s)					
(Dependents are not covered if not residing in Ontario, except as indicated in part 2 on the reverse side of the application)					


Fill this out with information about yourself.

1	Surname (family name) Please print		Initials	<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Ms	
	Street address		Insert the name by which you are known e.g. Tom, Vera, etc.		
	Apt. no.		Name of City/Town, etc.		
	Province		Postal code		
Name of present employer		Previous OHIP no. (if any)		Date of Birth	
				Day Month Year	
				Marital status	
				<input type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed	
				<input type="checkbox"/> Single <input type="checkbox"/> Separated <input type="checkbox"/> Other	
2 Insurable status <input type="checkbox"/> Single premium I have no eligible dependent(s). <input type="checkbox"/> Family premium I have eligible dependent(s)					
(Dependents are not covered if not residing in Ontario, except as indicated in part 2 on the reverse side of the application)					


It is important to apply for OHIP as soon as you arrive in Ontario. If you do, your OHIP coverage begins the next month.
You can ask OHIP for help if you can not pay your premiums.
If you get sick before your OHIP coverage starts, you should call or visit an OHIP office.

GRAMMAR: Past Form of the Verb Be

1




I'm at work now.




I was at the hospital until four last night.


2 Was is a past form of the verb Be. It is used with the pronouns: I, He, She.



He was at the hospital last night.



She was at the hospital last night.




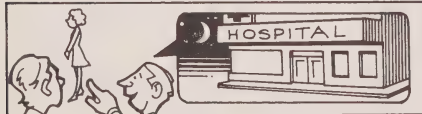
Lou was at the hospital last night.


3 Make sentences with Was.


a. 


He was at the hospital last night.

b. 

c. 

d. 

e. 

f. 

Tell about yourself.

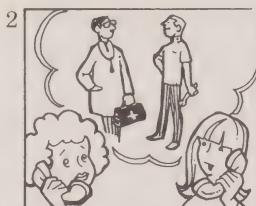
I last night.

The answers are on page 127.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Finding a Doctor or Dentist



Do you need a doctor or dentist?



It's best to ask your friends for the name of a good one.



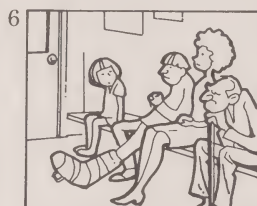
If your friends can't help you, here are other things you can do.



The College of Family Physicians has names of family doctors.



They will tell you what languages each doctor speaks.



You can also see a doctor in an out-patients clinic at a hospital.



The Ontario Dental Association has names of dentists near your home.



If a doctor or dentist suggests treatment



that you are not sure about, ask questions.



You can also go to another doctor or dentist



and get another opinion.



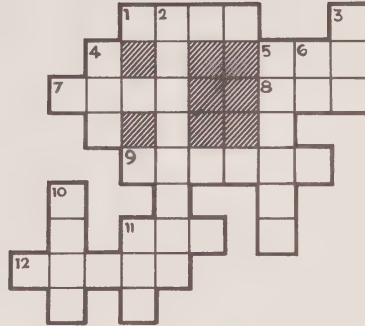
In a medical or dental emergency, go to a hospital.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Look in the dictionary if necessary.

Down

2. A place for sick people.
3. A male child.
4. "He" is a masculine pronoun.
— is a feminine pronoun.
5. The number after eleven.
6. A word to show surprise.
10. A word meaning "okay."
11. The opposite of "little."



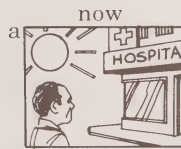
Across

1. The opposite of "this."
5. That's — bad.
7. The opposite of "that."
8. A question word meaning "What's the reason?"
9. The opposite of "big."
11. The opposite of "good."
12. "Till" is the short form of —.

The answers are on page 127.

PRONUNCIATION

Is and **was** sometimes sound almost the same. Listen. Which do you hear, a or b? Write a or b.



He's at the hospital.



He was at the hospital.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

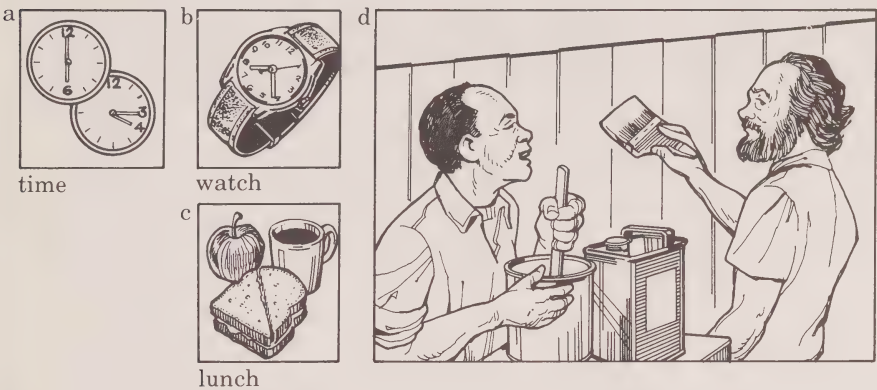
BINGO GAME

- a. Choose 24 items from the list below. Write one item, in pencil, into each box on the Bingo card. Do this in random order.
- b. Listen. When you hear an item, put a check mark in pencil beside it or cover it with a marker.
- c. When you have a row of items checked — either vertical, horizontal or diagonal, call out “Bingo” in a loud voice.

\$14.00	She’s at school.	1403 Main St.
\$40.00	She was at school.	1413 Main St.
\$ 1.15	How is he?	17 King St.
\$ 1.50	How was he?	70 King St.
Queen St.	East	\$16.60
Main St.	West	\$60.16
walk	He’s from Chile.	She’s fine.
work	She’s from Chile.	She’s five.
first name	He’s Tony.	
last name	He is Tony.	

UNIT 7: TELLING THE TIME

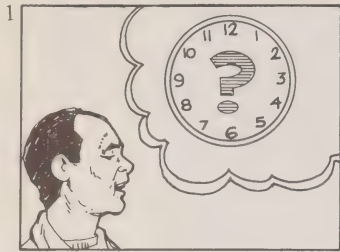
CONVERSATION: Lou Asks for the Time



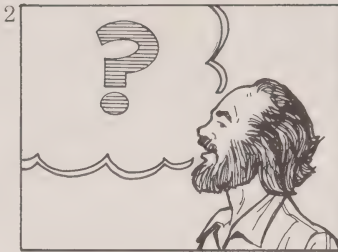
First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



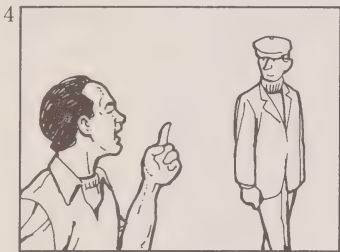
What time is it?



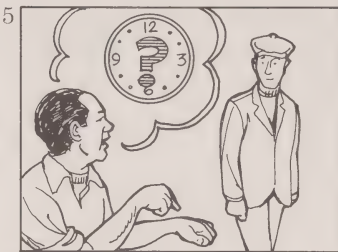
I don't know.



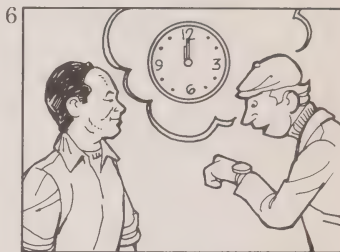
I don't have my watch.



Excuse me.



Do you have the time?



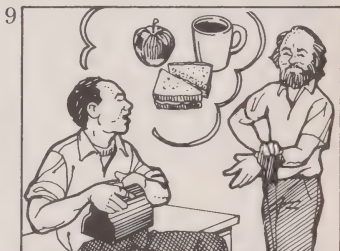
It's twelve o'clock.



Thank you.



It's twelve o'clock.



Time for lunch.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: What's the time?

What time do you have?

Picture 5: Could you tell me the time, please? (MORE FORMAL)

CLOCK TIMES AROUND THE WORLD

Look at the clocks below. The time on each clock is ahead of the time on the Ottawa clock. For example, the time in Rome, Italy is 6 hours ahead of the time in Ottawa. The time in Seoul, Korea is 14 hours ahead of the time in Ottawa.

What time is it? Complete each sentence.

1. A



It's one o'clock in Ottawa, Canada.

B



It's ... in Rome, Italy.

C



It's ... in London, England.

D



It's ... in Lisbon, Portugal.

2. A



It's eight-thirty in Ottawa, Canada.

B



It's ... in Athens, Greece.

C



It's ... in Seoul, Korea.

D



It's ... in Warsaw, Poland.

3. A



It's ten to nine in Ottawa, Canada.

B



It's ... in Belgrade, Yugoslavia.

C



It's ... in Jerusalem, Israel.

D



It's ... in Islamabad, Pakistan.

4. A



It's twenty after four in Ottawa, Canada.

B



It's ... in Beirut, Lebanon.

C



It's ... in Rome, Italy.

D



It's ... in London, England.

5. A



It's a quarter to five in Ottawa, Canada.

B



It's ... in Lisbon, Portugal.

C



It's ... in Athens, Greece.

D



It's ... in Seoul, Korea.

TELLING TIME

Practise telling the time.



eight o'clock



two minutes after } eight
past }



five after } eight
past }



ten after } eight
past }



a quarter after } eight
past }



twenty after } eight
past }



twenty-five after } eight
past }



eight-thirty
or
half past eight



twenty-five to nine



twenty to nine



a quarter to nine



fourteen minutes to nine



ten to nine




five to nine

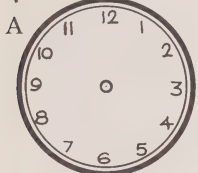


three minutes to nine



nine o'clock

 What time is it? Listen. Draw the hands to show the time.



A



B



C



D



E



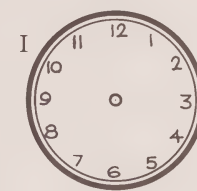
F



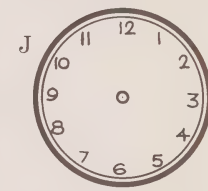
G



H



I



J

Digital Clocks

Sometimes people tell the time this way.

K  five o'clock

L  five-o-five

M  five-fifteen

N  five-thirty

O  five forty-five

P  five fifty-two

PRONUNCIATION

Listen to the teacher. Circle what you hear, a or b.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|---|
| 1.a. 9:40
b. 9:14 | 4.a. 2:40
b. 2:14 | 7.a. It's 7:30.
b. It's 7:13. | 10.a. The time is 11:30.
b. The time is 11:13. |
| 2.a. 9:40
b. 9:14 | 5.a. 2:40
b. 2:14 | 8.a. It's 7:30.
b. It's 7:13. | 11.a. The time is 11:30.
b. The time is 11:13. |
| 3.a. 9:40
b. 9:14 | 6.a. 2:40
b. 2:14 | 9.a. It's 7:30.
b. It's 7:13. | 12.a. The time is 11:30.
b. The time is 11:13. |

THE TIME OF DAY: Morning, Afternoon and Evening

Read this section and answer the questions.

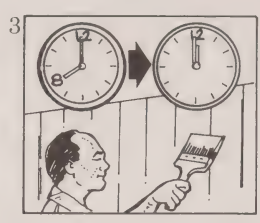


It's morning.



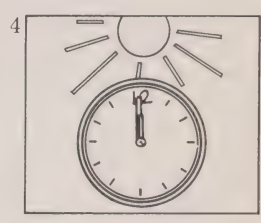
Lou wakes up at seven a.m. What time do you wake up?





Lou works from 8-12. What do you do in the morning?

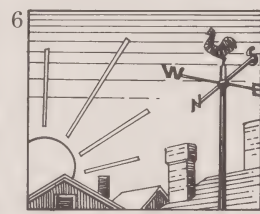




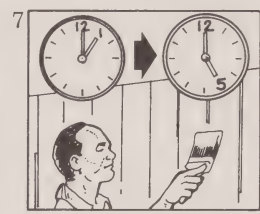
It's 12 noon.



Lou eats lunch at noon. What time do you eat lunch?



It's afternoon.



Lou works in the afternoon from one to five.



It's evening.

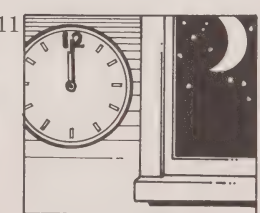


Sometimes Lou reads or watches television.

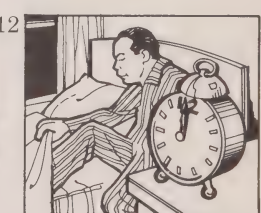


Sometimes he visits friends. What do you do in the evening?






It's 12:00 midnight.



Lou goes to bed around midnight. What time do you go to bed?



GRAMMAR: Negative Sentences with Don't

1


Long form

I	do	not	know.
---	----	-----	-------

Short form

I	don't	know.
---	-------	-------

I don't know.
I don't have my watch.


2 The short form: what happens

do not	do not	do n't	don't = don't
--------	-------------------	-------------------	---------------

3 These are AFFIRMATIVE sentences.


I know.
I have a watch.
I live on King St.


These are NEGATIVE sentences.





I don't know.
I don't have a watch.
I don't live on King St.


4 Make sentences.


a 


b 


c 

d 

e 

f 

g 

h 

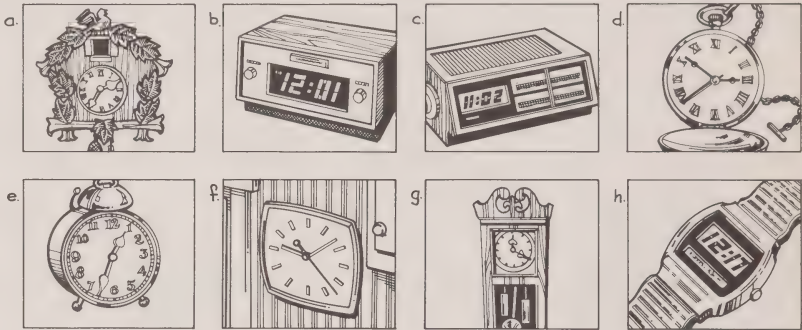
The answers are on page 127.

EXTRA STUDY: Personal Journal

Copy and complete this personal journal to show your typical Saturday.

On Saturday I usually wake up at _____. In the morning I _____. Then I eat lunch at _____. In the afternoon I usually _____. I eat supper at _____. In the evening I usually _____.

EXTRA STUDY: Kinds of Clocks



Match the picture to the word and put the letter in the box.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1 <input type="text"/> e alarm clock | 5 <input type="text"/> clock radio |
| 2 <input type="text"/> digital clock | 6 <input type="text"/> wall clock |
| 3 <input type="text"/> digital watch | 7 <input type="text"/> cuckoo clock |
| 4 <input type="text"/> pocket watch | 8 <input type="text"/> grandfather clock |

The answers are on page 127.

Say each word. The syllable written in dark letters is the strong syllable.

alarm digital pocket radio cuckoo grandfather

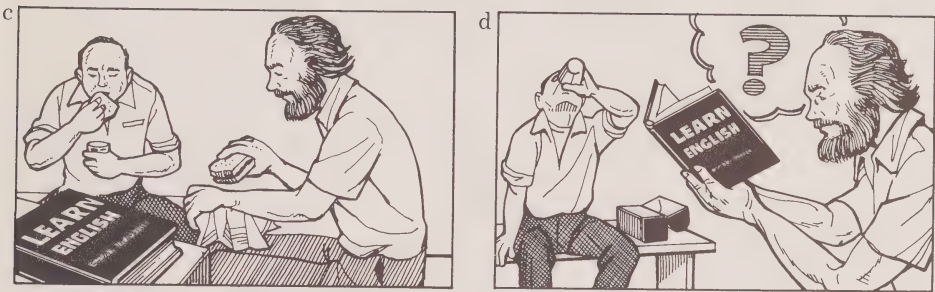
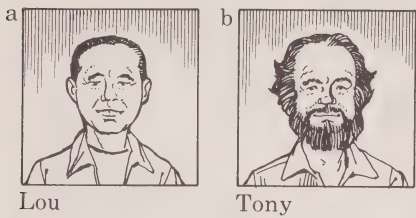


Take a partner. You can ask and answer these questions.

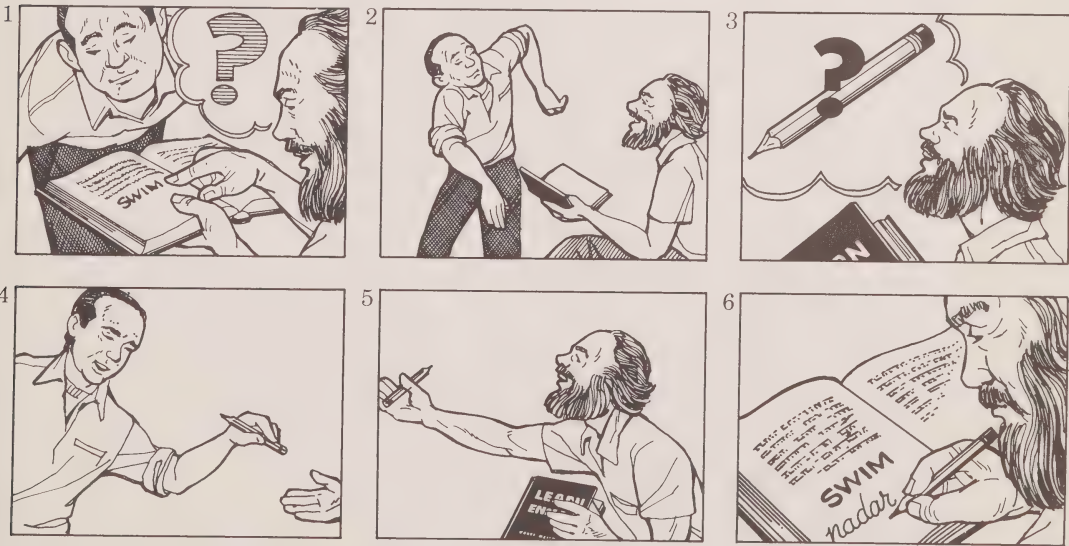
- | | | |
|-------------|---|--|
| Do you have | { an alarm clock?
a digital clock?
a digital watch?
etc. | Where was it made?
or
What country was it made in? |
|-------------|---|--|

UNIT 8: GETTING HELP WITH ENGLISH

CONVERSATION: Tony Asks Lou for Help



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



What does this word mean?



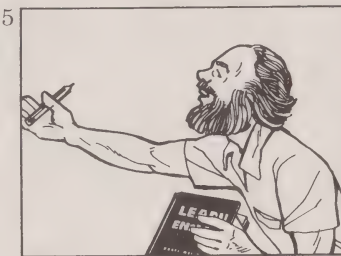
Oh, I understand.



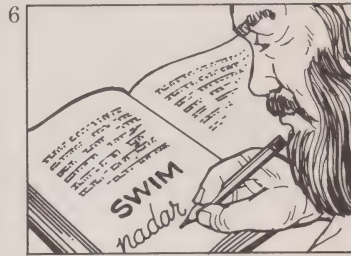
Do you have a pencil?



Yes. Here.



Thanks.



Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: I don't understand this word.

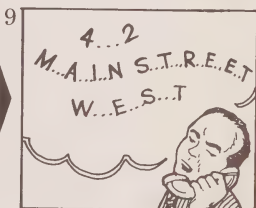
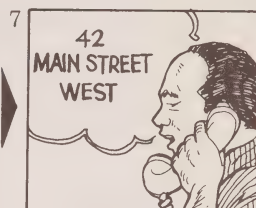
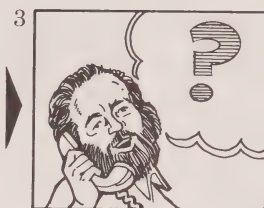
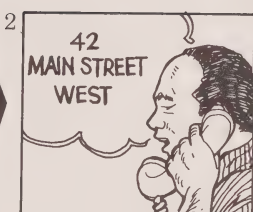
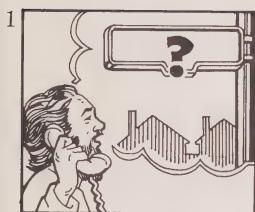
Picture 2: Oh, I see.

Picture 3: Do you have a pencil I could borrow? (MORE FORMAL)

Could you please lend me a pencil? (MORE FORMAL)

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES: Getting Help with English

Make four conversations.



1. What's your address?

2. 42 Main Street West.

3. Pardon?

4. Please repeat that.

5. Please speak louder.

6. Please speak slowly.

7. 42 Main Street West.

8. 42 MAIN STREET WEST.

9. 42 Main Street West.

PRONUNCIATION: Review of Alphabet Letters

- 1. These letters rhyme: A J K
- 2. These letters rhyme: B C D E G P T V
- 3. These letters start with the same sound: F L M N S X
- 4. These letters rhyme: I Y
- 5. These letters rhyme: Q U W
- 6. These letters don't rhyme: H O R Z



Take a partner. One of you says a letter. The other one points to it.



Listen. Circle the letter or letters you hear.
In numbers 13-30, watch your teacher's mouth.

1. a e	7. i e	13. m n	19. f s	25. v b
2. a e	8. i e	14. m n	20. f s	26. v b
3. a e	9. i e	15. m n	21. f s	27. v b
4. ae ea	10. ie ei	16. mn nm	22. fs sf	28. vb bv
5. ae ea	11. ie ei	17. mn nm	23. fs sf	29. vb bv
6. ae ea	12. ie ei	18. mn nm	24. fs sf	30. vb bv

SPEAKING ACTIVITY: Asking for Help with the Alphabet


Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

Each word below has one letter which is difficult to read. Point to that letter and say:

What's this letter?

Print the word.

1. *work*  work
2. *tired* _____
3. *twelve* _____
4. *Chile* _____
5. *Ontario* _____
6. *Toronto* _____
7. *sixteen* _____
8. *forty* _____
9. *Quebec* _____

B. 

Look at your partner's difficult letter. Find that letter here. Your partner doesn't look here. Tell your partner the name of the letter.

1. *work* 
2. *tired* 
3. *twelve* 
4. *Chile* 
5. *Ontario* 
6. *Toronto* 
7. *sixteen* 
8. *forty* 
9. *Quebec* 

Unfold this page. Check to see that you printed the correct letters. Then switch with your partner.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: The Parts of the Body

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

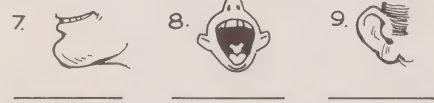
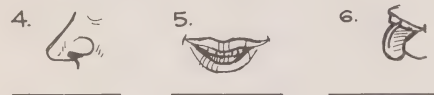
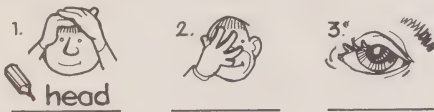
You want to know the names of the parts of the body. Look at each picture here; point to that part of your own body and ask your partner for the name. You can say:

What's this called?

and

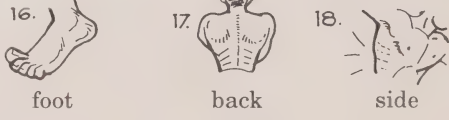
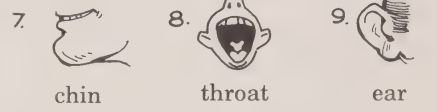
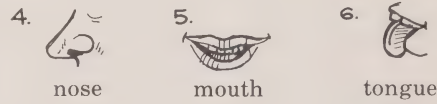
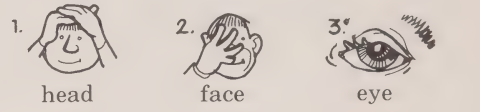
Please spell it.

Write each name under the picture.



B. 

When your partner points to a part of the body, look at the picture here and answer your partner with the name.



Unfold this page. Check your spelling. Then switch with your partner.

Asking for Help with Pronunciation

Some of the words on page 58 are difficult to pronounce, for example:

shoulder, Number 10 mouth, Number 5 chest, Number 19

Ask the teacher to help you with the pronunciation. Give the teacher the picture number of the word that is difficult for you. You can say:

Please pronounce (Number 10). or **How do you say (Number 10)?**
or **How do you pronounce (Number 10)?**

PRONUNCIATION

Here are some words from this unit. Listen to each word and circle the number of the strong syllable.

a. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">1 2 ③ understand</div>	b. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">① 2 pencil</div>	
c. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">1 2 pardon</div>	d. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">1 2 repeat</div>	e. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">1 2 louder</div>
f. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">1 2 slowly</div>	g. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">1 2 letter</div>	h. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">1 2 pronounce</div>
i. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">1 2 shoulder</div>	j. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">1 2 finger</div>	k. <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; text-align: center;">1 2 stomach</div>

The answers are on page 127.

SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.



Choose a word from below. Say the word to your partner.

head	throat	leg
face	ear	foot
eye	neck	back
nose	shoulder	side
mouth	arm	chest
tongue	hand	stomach
chin	finger	



Respond to A's word with one of these sentences.



Respond to B's sentence.

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. What does that mean? | 6. Please repeat that. |
| 2. Pardon? | 7. Please say that again. |
| 3. Please speak louder. | 8. How do you spell that? |
| 4. Please spell that. | 9. I don't understand that word. |
| 5. Please write that. | |

EXTRA STUDY: Languages of the World




The country that Ana comes from is Chile.
The language that she speaks is Spanish.

Here are some languages.

- | | | | |
|-----------|---------|----------------|------------|
| Afrikaans | Arabic | Chinese | Dutch |
| English | French | German | Greek |
| Hebrew | Hindi | Italian | Korean |
| Lao | Persian | Polish | Portuguese |
| Punjabi | Russian | Serbo-Croatian | Vietnamese |
| Spanish | Tagalog | Urdu | |

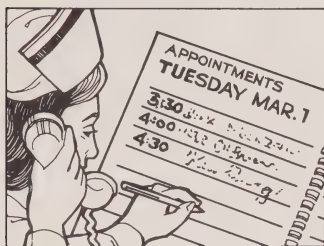
Here are countries from the map on page 7. Write a language that people speak in each country. Choose from the list above.

Country or Place	Language	Country or Place	Language
1. England	 English	16. Poland	
2. United States		17. Lebanon	
3. Vietnam		18. Germany	
4. Jamaica		19. Trinidad-Tobago	
5. India		20. Pakistan	
6. Hong Kong		21. Yugoslavia	
7. Portugal		22. Greece	
8. Philippines		23. Netherlands	
9. Guyana		24. Israel	
10. Italy		25. Soviet Union	
11. Scotland		26. Northern Ireland	
12. South Africa		27. Taiwan	
13. China		28. Iran	
14. Korea		29. Chile	
15. Laos		30. France	

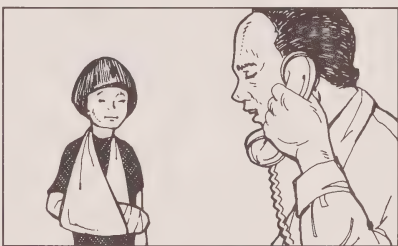
The answers are on page 128.

UNIT 9: TALKING ABOUT CALENDAR TIME

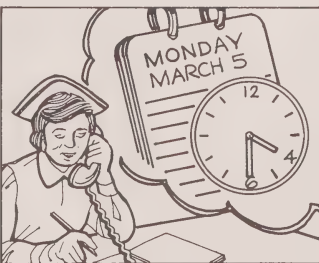
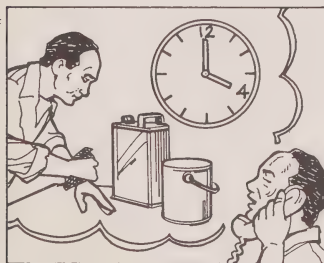
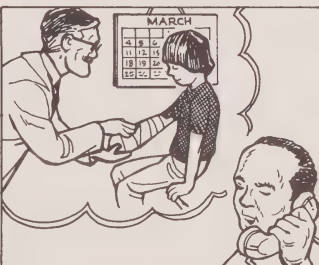
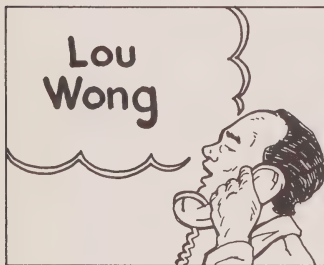
VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



CONVERSATION: A Doctor's Appointment for Ken



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



62

This is Lou Wong.

I'd like an appointment for my little boy.

How about Thursday,
March the first at ten a.m.?

I work until four.

How about 4:30 on Monday
the fifth?

Okay. That's fine.

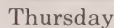
Picture 1: This is Lou Wong speaking.

Picture 2: I'd like to have $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{an appointment for my little boy.} \\ \text{make} \end{array} \right\}$

Picture 3: I can give you Thursday, March first at ten o'clock.

Tuesday and **Thursday** sound almost the same.

Listen. Which do you hear, a or b? Write a or b.



1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____ 9. _____

VOCABULARY: The Calendar

A. Ordinal Numbers


First and **fifth** are ordinal numbers. When we say a calendar date we use an ordinal number.



How about Thursday, March the first at ten a.m.?

Match the ordinal number to the cardinal number.

Cardinal Numbers

- one  first
- two _____
- three _____
- four _____
- five _____
- six _____
- seven _____
- eight _____
- nine _____
- ten _____

Ordinal Numbers

- fifth
- third
- first
- sixth
- second
- fourth
- tenth
- ninth
- eighth
- seventh



B. Days of the Week

Say the long form.

Match it with the short form.

- 1. Sunday
- 2. Monday
- 3. Tuesday
- 4. Wednesday
- 5. Thursday
- 6. Friday
- 7. Saturday

- Tues.
- Sat.
- Sun.
- Thurs.
- Fri.
- Mon.
- Wed.



Jan.						
Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31				

C. Months of the Year.


On a cheque, you can write the short form or the long form.
Feb. or February

PAY TO THE
ORDER OF

THE BANK OF BELLEVILLE
109 WATER STREET

Feb. 11 1984

Say the long form.

- 

Look at the calendar.
Copy the short form.
- Jan. _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____
- _____

JAN.	FEB.	MAR.
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1 2 3
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	4 5 6 7 8 9 10
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	11 12 13 14 15 16 17
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	18 19 20 21 22 23 24
29 30 31	26 27 28 29	25 26 27 28 29 30 31
APRIL	MAY	JUNE
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4 5	1 2
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	6 7 8 9 10 11 12	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	13 14 15 16 17 18 19	10 11 12 13 14 15 16
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	20 21 22 23 24 25 26	17 18 19 20 21 22 23
29 30	27 28 29 30 31	24 25 26 27 28 29 30
JULY	AUG.	SEPT.
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
29 30 31	26 27 28 29 30 31	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
OCT.	NOV.	DEC.
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6	1 2 3	1
7 8 9 10 11 12 13	4 5 6 7 8 9 10	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
14 15 16 17 18 19 20	11 12 13 14 15 16 17	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
21 22 23 24 25 26 27	18 19 20 21 22 23 24	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
28 29 30 31	25 26 27 28 29 30	23 24 25 26 27 28 29

LISTENING ACTIVITY: Calendar Dates

Listen. Circle the date you hear.

JAN.	FEB.	MAR.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1 2 3
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	4 5 6 7 8 9 10
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	11 12 13 14 15 16 17
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	18 19 20 21 22 23 24
29 30 31	26 27 28 29	25 26 27 28 29 30 31
APRIL	MAY	JUNE
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4 5	1 2
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	6 7 8 9 10 11 12	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	13 14 15 16 17 18 19	10 11 12 13 14 15 16
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	20 21 22 23 24 25 26	17 18 19 20 21 22 23
29 30	27 28 29 30 31	24 25 26 27 28 29 30
JULY	AUG.	SEPT.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
29 30 31	26 27 28 29 30 31	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
OCT.	NOV.	DEC.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6	1 2 3	1
7 8 9 10 11 12 13	4 5 6 7 8 9 10	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
14 15 16 17 18 19 20	11 12 13 14 15 16 17	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
21 22 23 24 25 26 27	18 19 20 21 22 23 24	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
28 29 30 31	25 26 27 28 29 30	23 24 25 26 27 28 29

JAN.	FEB.	MAR.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1 2 3
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	4 5 6 7 8 9 10
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	11 12 13 14 15 16 17
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	18 19 20 21 22 23 24
29 30 31	26 27 28 29	25 26 27 28 29 30 31
APRIL	MAY	JUNE
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4 5	1 2
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	6 7 8 9 10 11 12	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	13 14 15 16 17 18 19	10 11 12 13 14 15 16
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	20 21 22 23 24 25 26	17 18 19 20 21 22 23
29 30	27 28 29 30 31	24 25 26 27 28 29 30
JULY	AUG.	SEPT.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
29 30 31	26 27 28 29 30 31	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
OCT.	NOV.	DEC.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6	1 2 3	1
7 8 9 10 11 12 13	4 5 6 7 8 9 10	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
14 15 16 17 18 19 20	11 12 13 14 15 16 17	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
21 22 23 24 25 26 27	18 19 20 21 22 23 24	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
28 29 30 31	25 26 27 28 29 30	23 24 25 26 27 28 29



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

- Ask some people these questions:
- A. What's your name? (Please spell it.)
 - B. When's your birthday?
 - C. When did you come to Canada?

Write the answers here:



A. NAME	B. BIRTHDAY	C. DATE OF ARRIVAL IN CANADA
(Month) (Day)	(Month) (Day) (Year)	
Tony	June 6	Feb 7 1984

Continue in your notebook.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Calling for an Appointment

Caller:

Call and ask for an appointment.

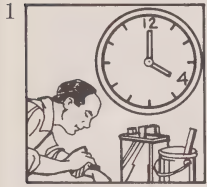
Receptionist:

- 1. Give an appointment time.
- 2. Ask for the caller's name and telephone number.
- 3. Write the name and phone number in the appointment book.

THURSDAY, MARCH 1.			FRIDAY, MARCH 2.		
TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.	TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.
10:00			10:00		
10:30			10:30		
11:00			11:00		
11:30			11:30		
12:00			12:00		
12:30			12:30		
1:00			1:00		
1:30			1:30		
2:00			2:00		
2:30			2:30		
3:00			3:00		
3:30			3:30		
4:00			4:00		
4:30			4:30		

MONDAY, APRIL 2.			TUESDAY, APRIL 3.		
TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.	TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.
10:00			10:00		
10:30			10:30		
11:00			11:00		
11:30			11:30		
12:00			12:00		
12:30			12:30		
1:00			1:00		
1:30			1:30		
2:00			2:00		
2:30			2:30		
3:00			3:00		
3:30			3:30		
4:00			4:00		
4:30			4:30		

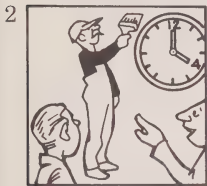
GRAMMAR: Verbs with s Added



This is a statement with I.

I work until four.

I work until 4.



This is a statement with He.
You add s to the verb work.

He works until four.

3 This is a statement with She.

She works until four.

4 This is a statement with Tony.

Tony works on King Street.

5 Make statements.



The answers are on page 128.

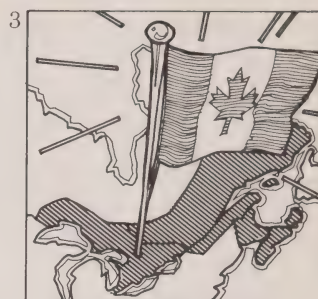
USEFUL INFORMATION: Holidays and Other Special Days



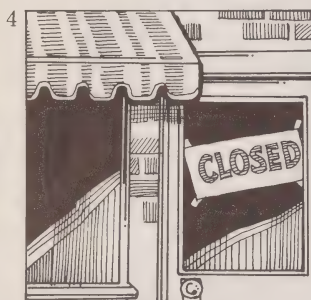
Canada Day is on July 1.



On July 1, in 1867, four separate provinces united.



Canada became a country.



Businesses are closed on July 1.



This is a national holiday.



In the evening there are fireworks in some of the public parks.

7. These are the national holidays:

New Year's Day, January 1
 Good Friday, in March or April
 Queen Victoria Day, May 24 or the Monday before
 Canada Day, July 1
 Labour Day, the first Monday in September
 Thanksgiving Day, the second Monday in October
 Christmas, December 25

8. This is a provincial holiday in Ontario.
 Not all businesses are closed:

Lord Simcoe Day, the first Monday in August

9. These are other special days in Canada:

Valentine's Day, February 14
 Easter Monday, in March or April
 Mother's Day, the second Sunday in May
 Father's Day, the third Sunday in June
 Hallowe'en, October 31
 Remembrance Day, November 11
 Boxing Day, December 26

EXTRA STUDY: More About Holidays and Other Special Days

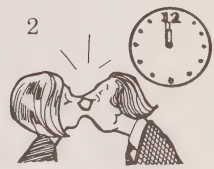
Read silently. Look in the dictionary if necessary.

New Year's Day — January 1

This is a national holiday. The evening of December 31 is called "New Year's Eve." On New Year's Eve there are parties and other celebrations. Exactly at midnight everyone kisses and says "Happy New Year."



a party



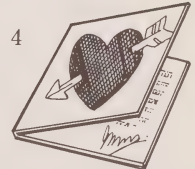
a kiss

Valentine's Day — February 14

The name comes from Saint Valentine. He lived hundreds of years ago. This day is special for people in love. They send greeting cards called "Valentines" or they give gifts. Children often give Valentine cards.



giving a gift



a valentine

Victoria Day — May 24, or the Monday before

This is the birthday of Queen Victoria; she was the Queen of England for more than 60 years. In the evening there are fireworks in some of the public parks.



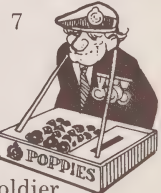
Queen Victoria

Remembrance Day — November 11

We remember the Canadian soldiers who died in World War I and II. Red poppy flowers grew on the graves of soldiers in Belgium. We buy red poppies and the money goes to veteran soldiers.



soldiers



a veteran soldier

Labour Day — The first Monday in September

This day honours all workers. There is often a parade on the main street of a city. Labour Day is the last day of summer holidays for children before they return to school.



a parade

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

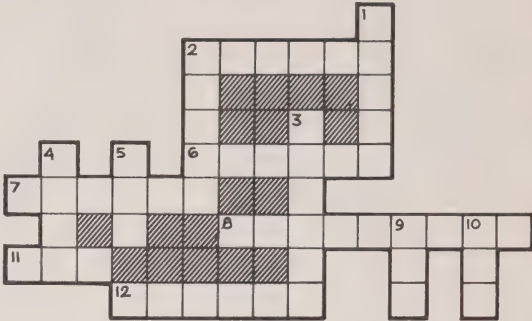
Down

- 1. After the second.
- 2. Before the second.
- 3. The day after Sunday.
- 4. Sixth month of the year.
- 5. Short form of "Sunday."
- 9. Short form of "Saturday."
- 10. Short form of "August."

Across

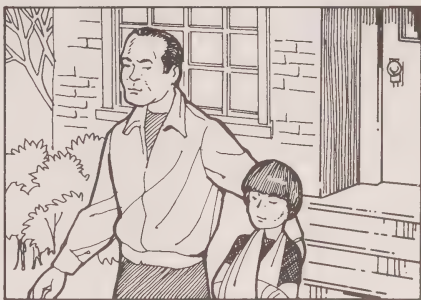
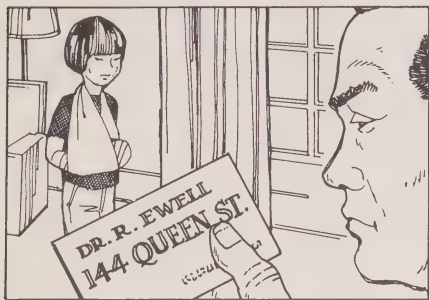
- 2. After the third.
- 6. After the first.
- 7. Eighth month of the year.
- 8. The day after Tuesday.
- 11. Short form of "February."
- 12. The day before Saturday.

The answers are on page 128.

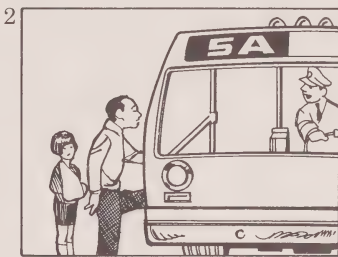


UNIT 10: FINDING YOUR WAY AROUND

CONVERSATION: Lou and Ken Take the Bus



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Do you go to Queen Street?



Yes.



Please call out Queen Street.



Sure.



Queen Street next.



Thank you.



You're welcome.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: Does this bus go to Queen Street?

Picture 3: Would you please call out Queen Street?

Picture 4: Okay. I will.

Picture 5: Next stop Queen Street.

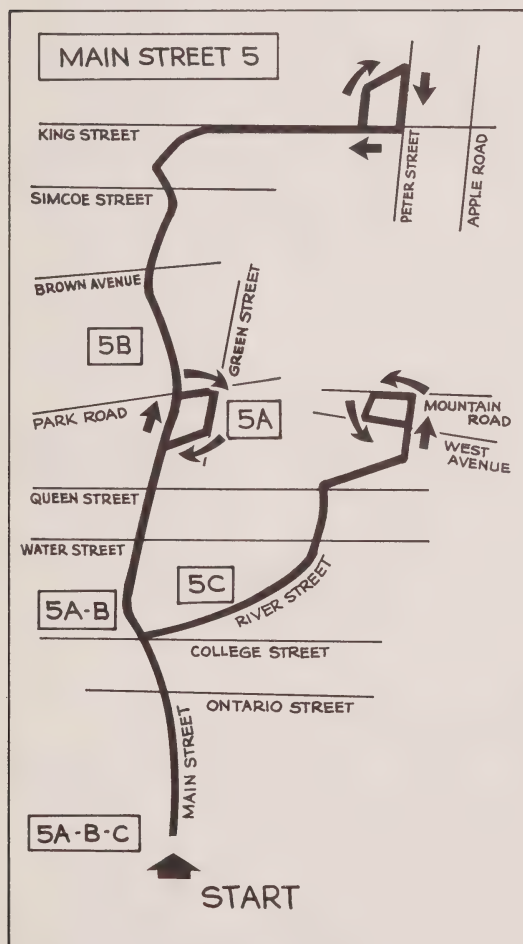
READING: Bus Routes

There are three buses on Main Street: 5A, 5B and 5C.



These three buses start out together on Main Street; then they go three different routes.

Here are the three bus routes.



Answer these questions.

1. Does the Number 5A bus go to Queen St.? Yes
2. Which bus goes to Brown Ave.? 5B
3. Does the Number 5C bus go to King St.? _____
4. Does the Number 5B go to Simcoe St.? _____
5. Which bus goes to West Ave.? _____
6. Which bus goes to Green St.? _____
7. Does the Number 5B go to Mountain Rd.? _____
8. Does the Number 5A go to Park Rd.? _____
9. Which bus goes to Peter St.? _____
10. Which bus goes to Mountain Rd.? _____
11. Does the 5A bus go to King St.?

The answers are on page 128.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Asking for the Right Bus

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.

A 

You want to get to each street below. Ask your partner for the right bus. You can say:
How do I get to (Queen Street)?
or
What bus do I take to (Queen Street)?



Write down the number of the bus.

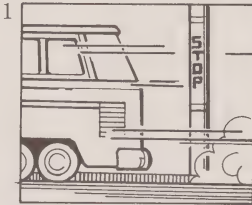
B 

Look at the bus route on page 73. Answer your partner. You can say:
Take the (5A) bus.

Queen Street	<u>5A-B</u>	Simcoe Street	_____	West Avenue	_____
Water Street	_____	Park Road	_____	Mountain Road	_____
Peter Street	_____	Green Street	_____	Apple Road	_____
King Street	_____	Brown Avenue	_____	College Street	_____

Look at the bus route on page 73 and check your numbers.

USEFUL INFORMATION: You Want to Get Off the Bus



Buses do not stop at every bus stop.



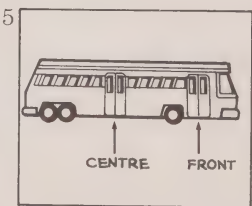
If you want to get off, pull the cord before you come to the bus stop.



Then the bus will stop for you.



Sometimes the driver says "Centre doors, please."



That means you exit by the centre doors, not the front doors.



You step down to open the doors.

GRAMMAR I: Questions with Does



This is a Yes or No question with **You**.

Do you live on King Street ?



This is a Yes or No question with **He**.

Does he live on King Street ?

This is the answer: **Yes** or **Yes** he does; or **No** or **No** he doesn't.

3. This is a question with **Ana**.

Does Ana live on King Street ?

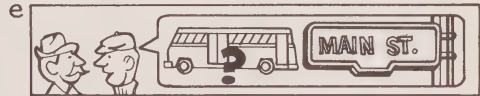
4. This is a question with **The 5A bus**.

Does the 5A bus go to King Street ?

5. Make questions.



Does she work on King Street ?



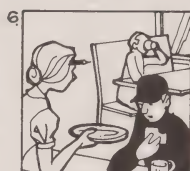
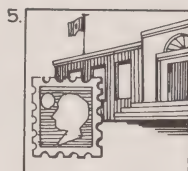
Does the bus go to Main Street ?



The answers are on page 128.

VOCABULARY: For Listening Activity

PART I: Places

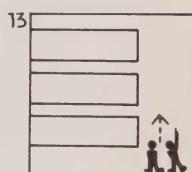
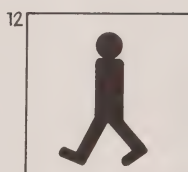
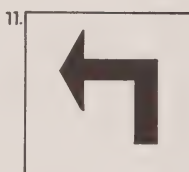
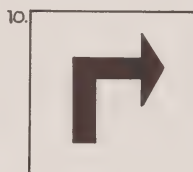


1. school
2. library
3. park
4. hospital
5. post office

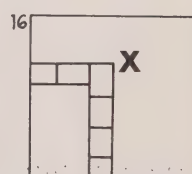
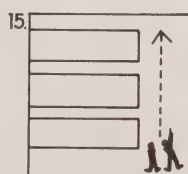
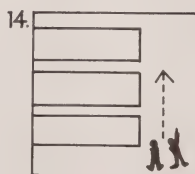
6. coffee shop
7. Canada Employment Centre
8. train station
9. bus station



PART II: Directions

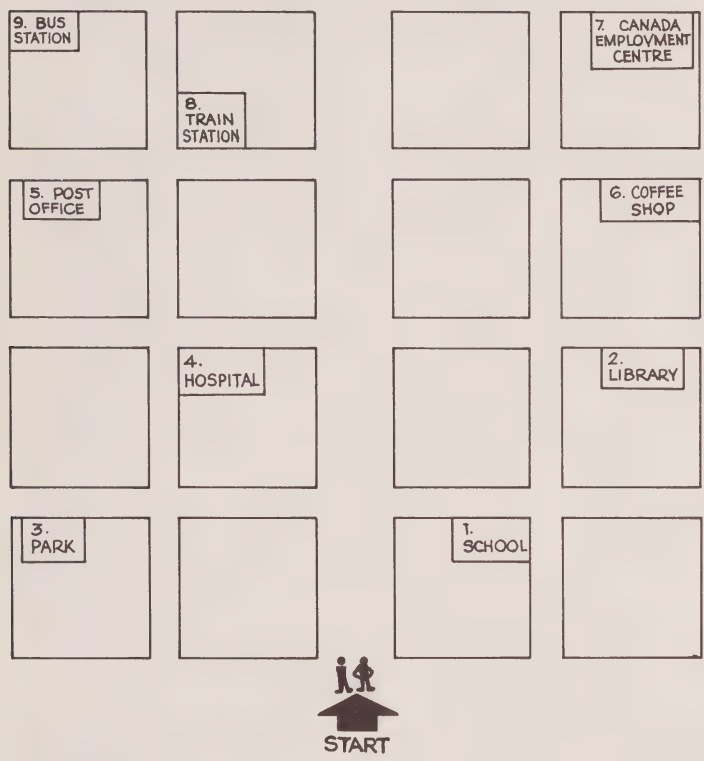


10. Turn right.
11. Turn left.
12. Walk.
13. Walk one block.
14. Walk two blocks.
15. Walk three blocks.
16. It's at the corner.



LISTENING ACTIVITY: Find the Place

- Before doing this activity look over the Vocabulary on page 76.
- Put your finger at **START**.
- Listen to the teacher's directions and follow with your finger. Where are you?



Take a partner.

You are the teacher. Give directions. Choose from these.

Turn right.
Turn left.

Walk one block.
Walk two blocks.
It's at the corner.

GRAMMAR II: Questions with Where



This is a question with **Where** and **You**.

Where do you live?



This is a question with **Where** and **She**.

Where does she live?

This is the answer: **on King Street**

3. This is a question with **Where** and **He**.

Where does he live?

4. This is a question with **Where** and **Ana**.

Where does Ana live?

5. Make questions with **Where**.



Where does he live?





Where do you work?







The answers are on page 128.

READING: Bus Signs

Read the signs below. The pictures will help you understand the words.

a



1.  WATCH

2.  YOUR STEP

b



3.  MOVE DOWN THE BUS

c



4.  KEEP ARM IN

5.  KEEP HEAD IN

d



6.  LIFT

7.  PUSH

e



8.  PULL DOWN LEVER

9.  PUSH OUT PANEL

f



10.  BREAK COVER

11.  TURN HANDLE

Cover up the pictures. Look at each sign. Do you understand it?

PRONUNCIATION

These two questions sound almost the same.



Does he live on King Street?



Does she live on King Street?



Listen. Circle what you hear,



or



1.



2.



3.



4.



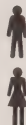
5.



6.



7.



8.



Here are questions and answers about Tony and Ana.

Where does he live? On Simcoe Street.

Where does she live? On King Street.

The two questions sound almost the same. Listen to the question and give the correct answer.

Here are the names of streets you can find in some Ontario cities.
Listen to each name and circle the number of the strong syllable.

a. Huron St. 1. 2.

b. Ontario Ave. 1. 2. 3. 4.

c. McKenzie St. 1. 2. 3.

d. Simcoe St. 1. 2.

e. Niagara Ave. 1. 2. 3. 4.

f. Avenue Rd. 1. 2. 3.

g. Victoria Ave. 1. 2. 3. 4.

h. Elizabeth St. 1. 2. 3. 4.

i. River St. 1. 2.

j. MacDonald St. 1. 2. 3.

k. College St. 1. 2.

The answers are on page 128.

Write the name of the street you live on. _____

Write the name of the street your school is on. _____

Write the name of two or three streets you use when you come to school.

In each street name, show the strongest syllable. Ask your teacher to help you.

EXTRA STUDY: Two-line Dialogues

Complete each dialogue.

1. Why are you tired?

☐ C I was at the hospital until four last night.

2. Where does Ana live?

☐ _____

3. What time is it?

☐ _____

4. I'd like an appointment.

☐ _____

5. Why are you tired?

☐ _____

6. How's your sister?

☐ _____

Choose from these sentences.

- A. On King Street.
- B. How about October 19, at two o'clock?
- C. I was at the hospital until four last night.
- D. She's fine.
- E. I don't know. I don't have my watch.
- F. I was at work until twelve last night.

The answers are on page 128.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Look in the dictionary if necessary.

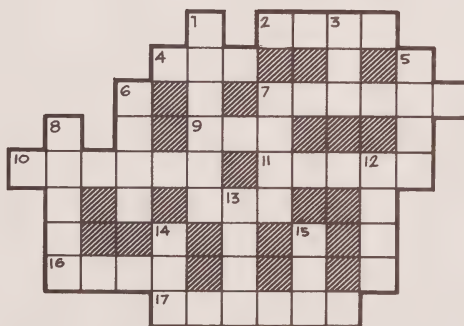
Down:

- 1. Between the front and back.
- 3. Automobile.
- 5. Opposite of "right."
- 6. The number after four.
- 7. You pull this when you want to get off the bus.
- 8. Opposite of "back."
- 12. Please ___ me.
- 13. The number before ten.
- 14. The number before two.
- 15. Short form of "Avenue."

Across:

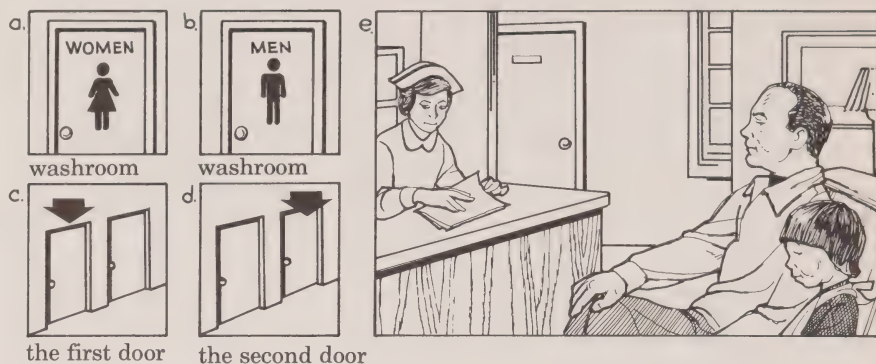
- 2. Opposite of "front."
- 4. The number after nine.
- 7. Where two streets meet.
- 9. The number before three.
- 10. The person who drives the bus is the bus ___.
- 11. Opposite of "left."
- 16. A small city.
- 17. The number after ten.

The answers are on page 128.



UNIT 11: GETTING DIRECTIONS INSIDE

CONVERSION: Ken Asks For Directions



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



Words for the Conversation on page 84.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES

Make as many conversations as you can.

1

Where's the washroom?

2

Turn right.
It's the second door.

3

I'm sorry.
I don't know.

4

Thank you.

5

Pardon?

6

Thanks anyway.

7


You're welcome.


8


Turn right.
It's the second door.


READING: Signs in a Building


Here are some signs that you might see in a building.

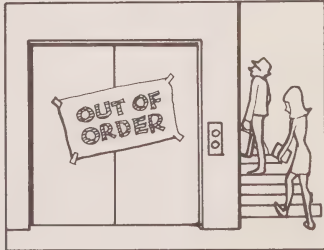
a.

b.

c.

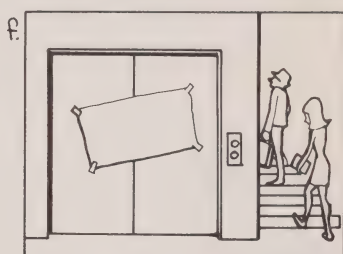
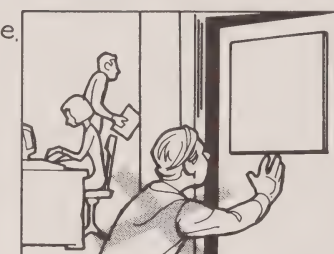
d.

e.

f.

83

Here are the pictures without the signs. Can you remember the signs?



Match the picture to the sign and put the letter in the box.

1. ☐ d Please use revolving doors.

2. ☐ Fire door. Keep closed.

3. ☐ Caution. Wet floors.

4. ☐ Employees only.

5. ☐ Out of Order.

6. ☐ Wet Paint.

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

1. Excuse me.

2. Yes?

3. Where's the washroom?

4. Turn right.

5. It's the second door.

6. Thanks.

7. Excuse me.

8. It's the other way.

9. Thank you.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: Pardon me.

Picture 3: Could you please tell me where the washroom is?
(MORE FORMAL)

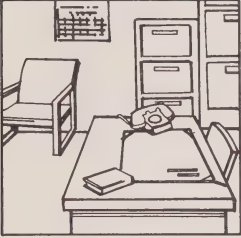

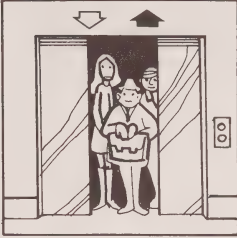
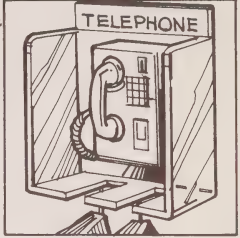

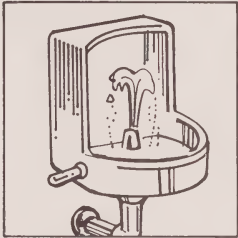

Picture 4: It's to the right.

Picture 7: Just a minute. (INFORMAL)

Wait. (INFORMAL)





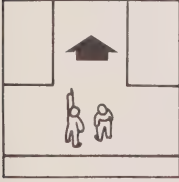

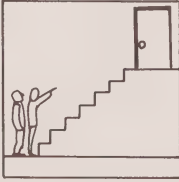
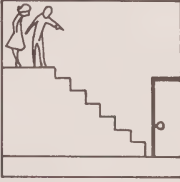
VOCABULARY: For the Listening Activity

Part I: Places and Objects Inside A Building

1. 	2. 	3. 	4. 
5. 	6. 	7. 	8. 

1. office
2. exit
3. elevator
4. telephone
5. coffee shop
6. water fountain
7. fire alarm
8. library

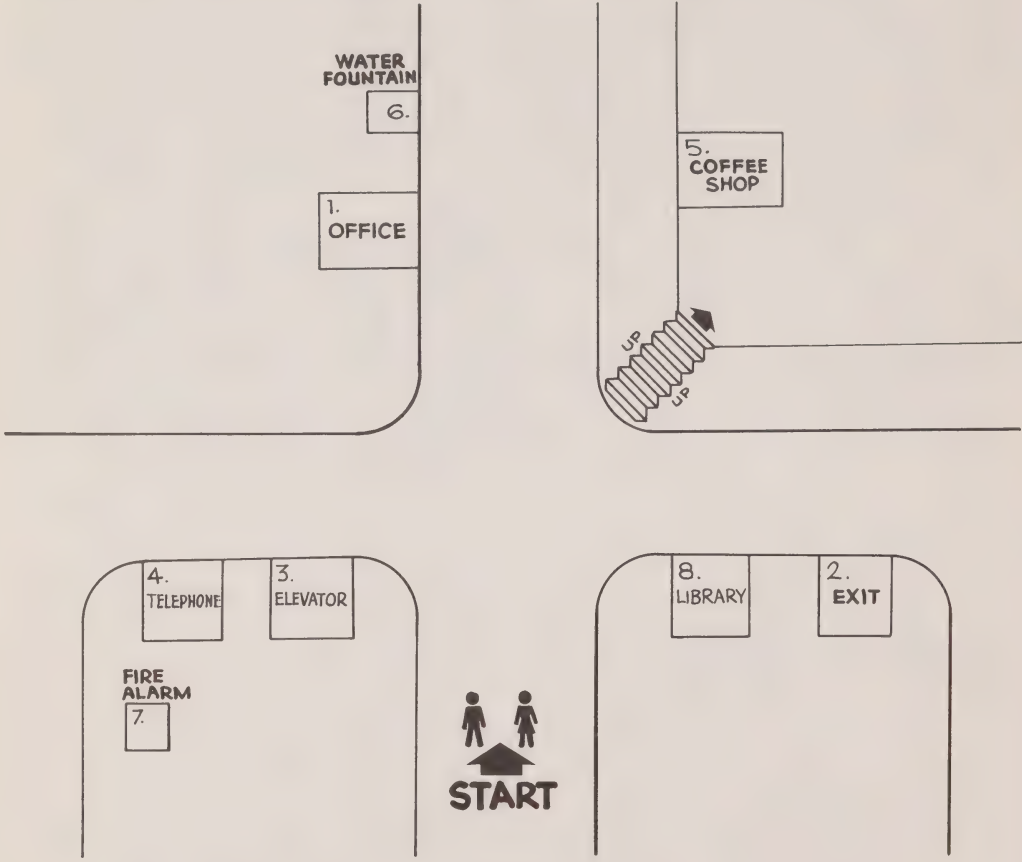
PART II: Directions

9. 	10. 	11. 	12. 
13. 	14. 	15. 	16. 

9. Turn right.
10. Turn left.
11. The first door.
12. The second door.
13. Go straight ahead.
14. Next to the office.
15. One floor up.
16. One floor down.

LISTENING ACTIVITY: Find the Place

- a. Before doing this activity look over the Vocabulary on page 85.
- b. Put your finger at **START**.
- c. Listen to the teacher's directions and follow with your finger. Where are you?



Take a partner.
You are the teacher. Give directions. Choose from these:

- Turn right.
- Turn left.
- Turn left again.
- Go straight ahead.

It's { the first door.
the second door.
next to the office.
one floor up.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Directions

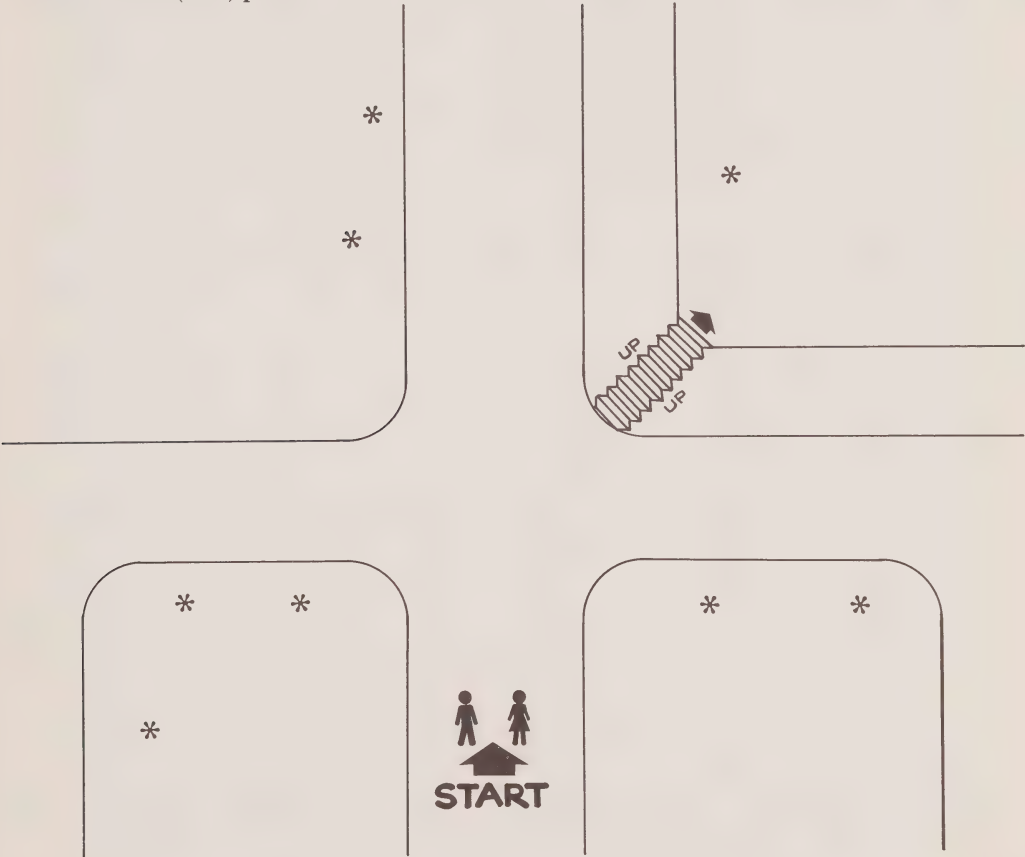
- a. Tear out each picture card at the bottom of the page.

b. Take a partner.

c. Put one picture card on each star. Your partner doesn't look.

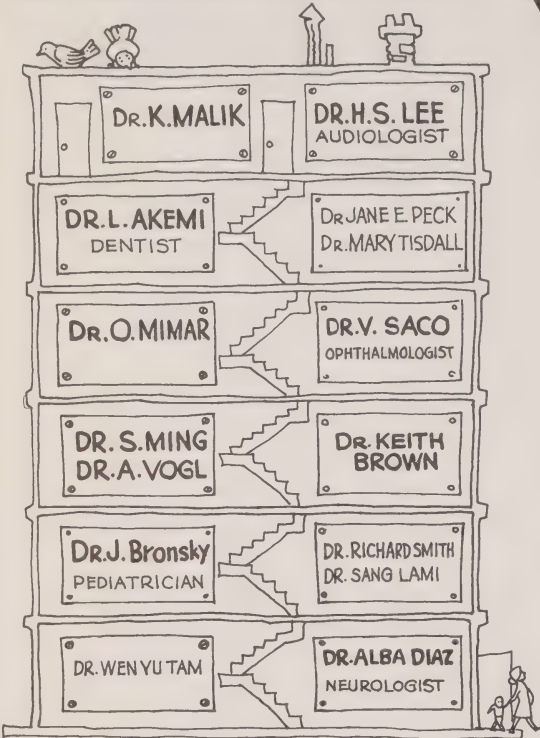
d. Your partner takes one of his/her picture cards and says:
Where's the (exit) please?
- e. You look at your floor plan and give directions. Your partner puts his/her card in the right place on his/her floor plan.

f. When all the picture cards are placed, check to make sure both floor plans look the same.



VOCABULARY: The Floors of a Building

Here are some doctors' offices in a building.



On what floor is each doctor?

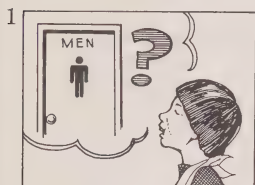
Write the answers.

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| a. Doctor Akemi | g. Doctor Peck |
| <u>the fifth floor</u> | _____ |
| b. Doctor Tam | h. Doctor Ming |
| <u>the first floor</u> | _____ |
| c. Doctor Saco | i. Doctor Lee |
| _____ | _____ |
| d. Doctor Mimar | j. Doctor Malik |
| _____ | _____ |
| e. Doctor Diaz | k. Doctor Smith |
| _____ | _____ |
| f. Doctor Bronsky | l. Doctor Lami |
| _____ | _____ |

The answers are on page 129.

library fire alarm water fountain coffee shop telephone elevator exit office

GRAMMAR: Question-word Questions with Is



Long form:

Where is the washroom?

Short form:

Where's the washroom?

Where's the washroom?

2. The short form: what happens.

Where is**Where's****Where's****= Where's**

3. The short form with What and How.

What's your name?**How's your little boy?**

4. Make questions with Where.

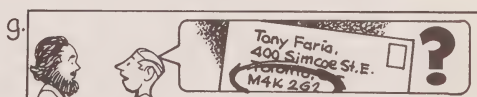
**Where's the washroom?**





Make questions with What.

**What's your name?**

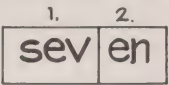




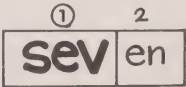
The answers are on page 129.

PRONUNCIATION: The Sound (ə)

A. Look at this word. It has two syllables.



B. The first syllable is strong.
We stress it; we say it louder.
It is called the stressed syllable.



C. Here is the stressed syllable.

sev

Here is the unstressed syllable.

en

D. The vowel **e** in the unstressed syllable is pronounced (ə).
This weak and short sound (ə) is called the Schwa.

E. Here are more two-syllable words in which the first syllable is stressed. The second syllable in each word is unstressed and has the sound (ə).

1 **quarter**

The letter **e** is pronounced (ə).

2 **pencil**

The letter **i** is pronounced (ə).

3 **dollar**

The letter **a** is pronounced (ə).

4 **langu²age**

The letter **a** is pronounced (ə).

5 **doct²or**

The letter **o** is pronounced (ə).

6 **second**

The letter **o** is pronounced (ə).

F. Here is a two-syllable word in which the second syllable is stressed. The first syllable is unstressed and has the sound (ə).

7 **police**

The letter **o** is pronounced (ə).

G. In most two-syllable nouns in English, the first syllable has the strongest stress.

H. Each word below has the sound (ə). Listen. Which letter is pronounced (ə)? Write the letter.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|--|---|--------------------------|
| 1. exit <u> i </u> | 4. nickel <u> </u> | 7. ¹ al ² arm <u> </u> | 9. welcome <u> </u> |
| 2. office <u> </u> | 5. sen ^t ence <u> </u> | 8. hundred <u> </u> | 10. about <u> </u> |
| 3. July <u> </u> | 6. answer <u> </u> | | |

I. In each word below there is no Schwa (ə). The first syllable has the strongest stress, but both syllables are stressed. There is no unstressed syllable.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 11. coffee | 13. Monday | 15. country | 17. slowly |
| 12. fourteen | 14. forty | 16. morning | |

PRONUNCIATION: Noun Compounds

The words below are called noun compounds. A noun compound is made up of two words. Listen to each compound and circle the number of the strongest syllable.

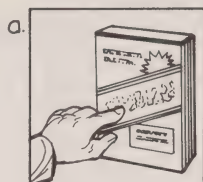
a. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> ① 2 3 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> coffee shop </div>	b. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 1 ② 3 4 5 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> apartment number </div>
c. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 1 2 3 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> bus station </div>	d. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 1 2 3 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> train station </div>
e. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 1 2 3 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> fire alarm </div>	
f. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 1 2 3 4 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> fire department </div>	g. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 1 2 3 4 5 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> department number </div>
h. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 1 2 3 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> post office </div>	
i. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 1 2 3 4 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> water fountain </div>	j. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 1 2 3 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> postal code </div>
k. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 150px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> 1 2 3 4 5 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> telephone number </div>	

Does the strongest syllable come in the first word or the second word of a noun compound?

The answers are on page 129.

UNIT 12: SHOPPING FOR GROCERIES

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



this box



that box



(to) not like

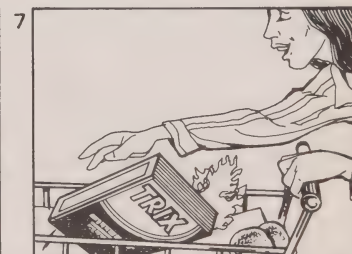
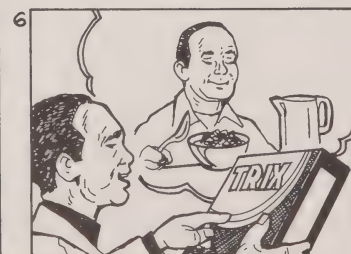
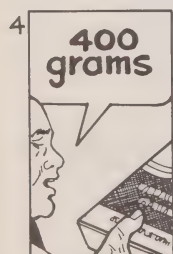
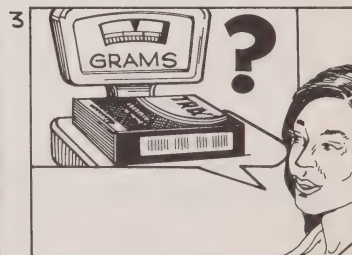


(to) like

CONVERSATION: Lou and Su Ping Go Shopping




First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



Words for the Conversation on page 99.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: The Price of Groceries

Beside a write what you pay for each item, or how much you think it costs.

1.  bread
a. _____ a loaf
b. _____ a loaf


2.  milk
a. _____ a litre
b. _____ a litre

3.  butter
a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram

4.  coffee
a. _____ for 57 grams
b. _____ for 57 grams

5.  teabags
a. _____ for 12
b. _____ for 12

6.  hand soap
a. _____ a bar
b. _____ a bar

7.  sugar
a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram

8.  toothpaste
a. _____ for 50 ml.
b. _____ for 50 ml.


9.  onions
a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram

10.  potatoes
a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram


11.  beef
a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram

12.  chicken
a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.

A. 

Ask what B pays for each item above and write it beside b.
You can say:
How much do you pay for (bread)?
or
What do you pay for (bread)?

B. 

Answer A. You can say any of these sentences:
\$ _____.
I think \$ _____.
I don't remember.
I don't buy that.
I haven't bought that for a long time.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Grocery Products without Brand Names

Some grocery products are cheaper because they have no brand names and less money is spent on advertising. These products have no pictures on the containers.



Brand name




No brand name


Do you buy products without brand names?
Which products?

READING: Expiry and Packaging Dates

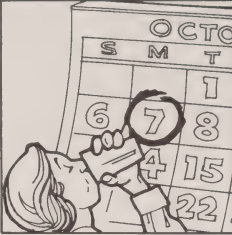
PART I: Expiry Dates

1. 

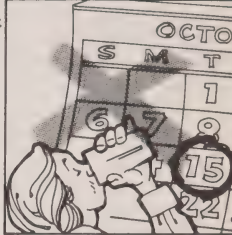
Here is a container of milk.

2. 

This is the expiry date. The milk is good until Oct. 8.


3. 

On Oct. 7 the milk is still good for use. You can drink it.


4. 


After Oct. 8, the milk may not be good.


Today is Aug. 28, 1984. The items below are in your kitchen. Are they still good?

5. 


Yes _____

6. 


7. 

8. 


9. 

10. 


11. 

12. 

Part II: Packaging Dates


13. 


This man is packaging meat.


14. 

The packaging date is October twenty-first.

Read these packaging dates. Write out each one in your notebook.

15. 

16. 

17. 

SPEAKING ACTIVITY: Directions in the Supermarket

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

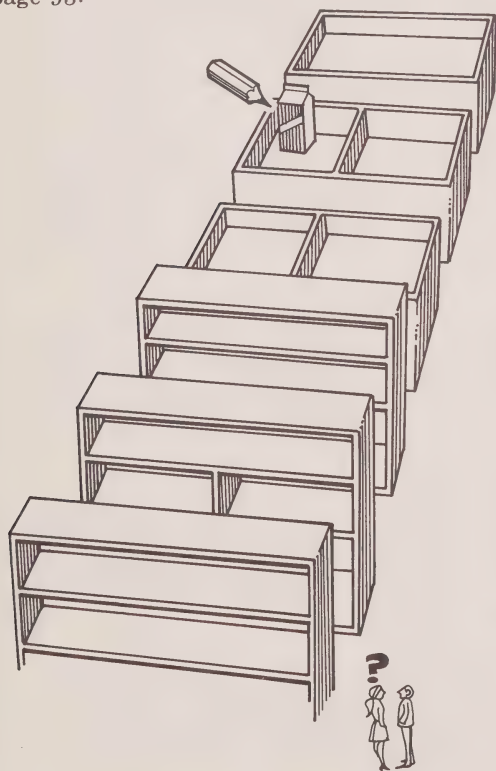
Here are some groceries you are looking for.

bread	coffee
teabags	butter
milk	toothpaste
hand soap	chicken

Ask your partner for directions. You can say:
Where can I find (the bread)?

When you get directions draw in the grocery product.

If you don't know how to draw it, look on page 93.



B. 

Give your partner directions. You can say:

On the bottom shelf.

On the top shelf.

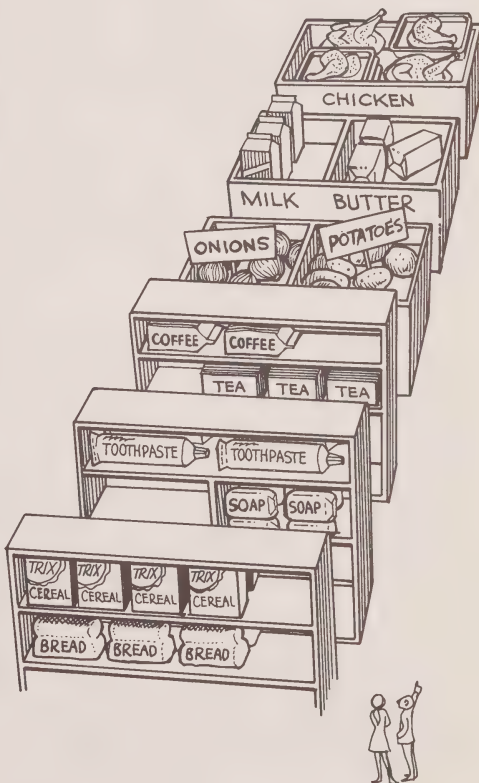
In the next aisle.

In the second aisle.

In the third aisle.

In the fourth aisle.

In the last aisle.



Unfold this page. Check to see that your products are in the correct place.
Then switch with your partner.

GRAMMAR: Negative Sentences with Doesn't



This is an **AFFIRMATIVE** statement.

Lou likes TRIX cereal.



This is a **NEGATIVE** statement.

Lou doesn't like MUNCHIES cereal.

3. The short form: what happens.

does not	does not	doesn't	doesn't	=	doesn't
----------	----------	---------	---------	---	---------

4. Negative statement with He.

He doesn't like MUNCHIES cereal.

5. Negative statement with She.

She doesn't like TRIX cereal.

6. Make affirmative and negative statements with like.



He likes chicken.





He doesn't like beef.











The answers are on page 129.

7. Here are two new pronouns.

we



they



8. Here are more negative statements.

I You We They	don't	live on Main St. work on Sunday.
He She Lou Ana My friend	doesn't	have a watch. like chicken. know the time.

9. Make negative statements with the verb **have**.

a. She **doesn't** have change.

b. _____

c. _____

d. _____

e. _____

Make negative statements with the verbs **work** and **live**.

f. I **don't** work on Saturday.

g. _____

h. _____

i. _____

j. _____

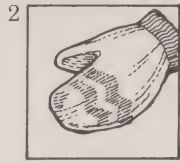
The answers are on page 129.

PRONUNCIATION: The Sounds (ē) and (i).

Meat has the sound (ē). Mitt has the sound (i). The sounds (ē) and (i) can be confused.



meat



mitt

To make the sound (ē), press the tongue against the upper side teeth and spread the lips.

To make the sound (i), relax the mouth. This is a short vowel.



Here are more words with the sound (ē), from Units 1 to 12.



Here are more words with the sound (i), from Units 1 to 12.

- 5. he
- 6. coffee
- 7. seat
- 8. sorry
- 9. she
- 10. thirteen
- 11. please
- 12. twenty

- 13. live
- 14. big
- 15. milk
- 16. it's
- 17. until
- 18. little
- 19. chicken
- 20. six
- 21. chin

Here are two sentences with (ē) and (i).

- a. Do you have the meat?
- b. Do you have the mitt?



Listen. Which sentence do you hear, a or b? Write a or b.

22. _____ 23. _____ 24. _____ 25. _____ 26. _____ 27. _____ 28. _____ 29. _____

Here are some other sounds that can be confused.

- (e) as in ten and (ā) as in name
- (a) as in hat and (o) as in clock
- (u) as in look and (ü) as in too

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. How much is that? | 5. This is a dollar-fifty |
| 2. A dollar-fifty. | for five hundred grams. |
| 3. How many grams is it? | 6. But I like this. |
| 4. Four hundred. | 7. Okay. |

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: How much does that cost?

What's the price of that?

Picture 3: How many grams does it weigh?

Picture 7: Okay. We'll take this one.

Okay. Let's get this one.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

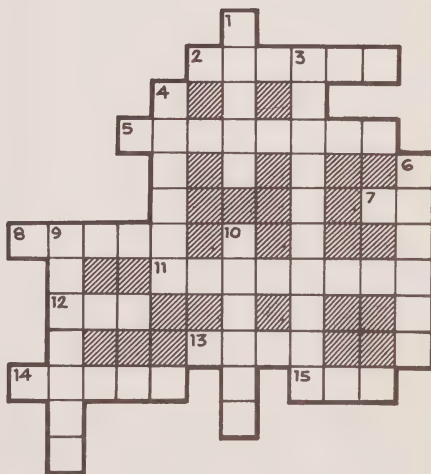
Look in the dictionary, if necessary.

Down:

- Some people put this in their tea or coffee to make it sweet.
- We use this to brush our teeth. It comes in a tube.
- Some people drink this in the morning.
- After the third and before the fifth.
- $2 \times 50 = \text{one } \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$
- After the first and before the third.

Across:

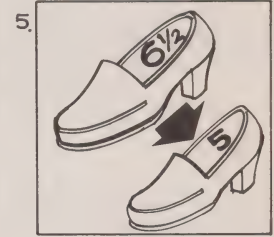
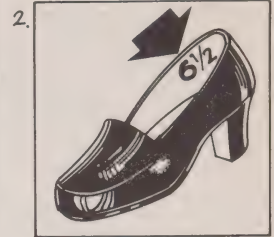
- We spread this on our bread or toast. It's made from milk.
- These vegetables have brown skin and grow in the ground. We cook them.
- Opposite of "Yes."
- The number after two.
- This carries you up and down from floor to floor inside a building.
- This word makes the sentence negative.
- This part of your body is at the bottom of your leg.
- Su Ping asked Lou how many $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ the box weighed.
- Everybody needs to $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ in order to live.



The answers are on page 129.

UNIT 13: SHOPPING FOR CLOTHES

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



Nouns

1. shoes
2. the size

Adjectives

3. small
4. big
5. a smaller size

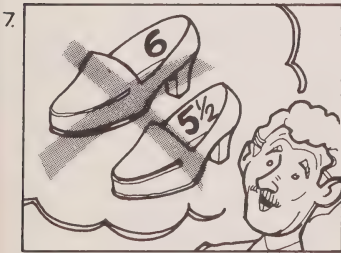
Verbs

6. (to) touch

CONVERSATION: Su Ping Goes Shopping for Shoes



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



Words for the Conversation on page 104.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES

Make three conversations.

1

Can I help you?

2

Yes. Do you have these in size 6½?

3

Do you have these shoes in white?

4

No thanks. I'm just looking.

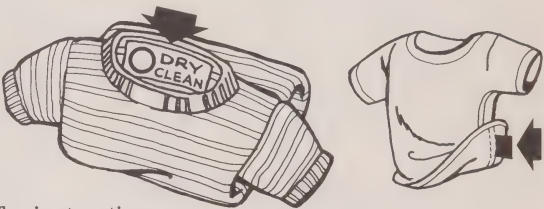
5

I'll take a look.

6

Fine.

READING: Instructions for Care of Clothing




Clothing labels sometimes have instructions. The instructions tell you how to wash or clean the clothing. Here are some instructions and some pictures to show the meaning.

a.




Dry clean.

b.




Machine wash.

c.




Lay flat to dry.

d.



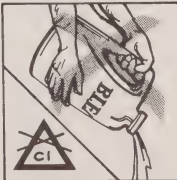
Low iron.

e.




Hand wash.

f.




Do not bleach.

g.



Line dry or Hang to dry.

h.



Use mild soap.

Here are the same pictures. Can you remember the instructions?

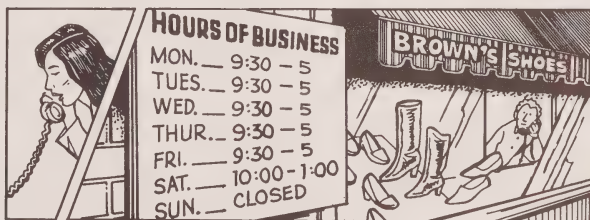


Match the picture to the instruction and put the letter in the box.

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> e Hand wash. | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Line dry <u>or</u> Hang to dry. | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> Do not bleach. |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Machine wash. | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Lay flat to dry. | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Use mild soap only. |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Dry clean. | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> Low iron. | |

READING: Hours of Business

Before Su Ping went shopping, she called the store to find out the hours of business.



You are the storekeeper. Answer these questions.



- What time do you open on Monday? Nine-thirty
- What time do you close on Wednesday? Five o'clock
- What time do you open on Saturday? _____
- What time do you open on Tuesday? _____
- What time do you close on Friday? _____
- What time do you open on Thursday? _____



COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Hours of Business

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

You are a shopper. Telephone the store to find out the missing hours of business and write them in. You can say:

What time do you open (on Monday)?
and
What time do you close (on Tuesday)?

Monday	<input type="text"/> - 6 p.m.
Tuesday	9 a.m. - <input type="text"/>
Wednesday	9 a.m. - <input type="text"/>
Thursday	<input type="text"/> - 9 p.m.
Friday	9 a.m. - 8 p.m.
Saturday	10 a.m. - <input type="text"/>
Sunday	

B. 

You are the salesman. Look here at the hours of business and answer your partner's questions.

Monday	9 a.m. - 6 p.m.
Tuesday	9 a.m. - 6 p.m.
Wednesday	9 a.m. - 6 p.m.
Thursday	9 a.m. - 9 p.m.
Friday	9 a.m. - 8 p.m.
Saturday	10 a.m. - 2 p.m.
Sunday	Closed

Unfold this page. Check to see that you wrote the correct times. Then switch with your partner.

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

- | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Can I help you? | 3. I'll take a look. | 7. Sorry. I don't have |
| 2. Yes. Do you have these | 4. Have a seat. | a smaller size. |
| in size 6½? | 5. Here you are. | 8. Okay. Thank you. |
| | 6. They're too big. | 9. Ken. Don't touch the shoes. |

Other Sentences You May Hear

- Picture 1: May I help you?
Do you need some help?
- Picture 2: Yes. I'd like to try these in size 6½.
- Picture 3: I'll see if we have a size 6½.
- Picture 6: They're too loose.
They don't fit.
- Picture 7: Sorry. I don't have anything smaller.
Sorry. There's nothing smaller.
Sorry. 6½ is the smallest we have.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Returning an Item



When you buy an item, keep the sales receipt.



If you don't like the item,



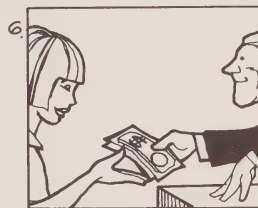
and you want to return it to the store,



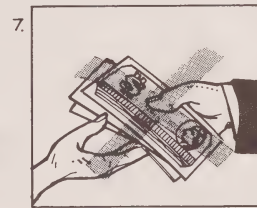
you need the receipt.



In some stores, they will take back the item



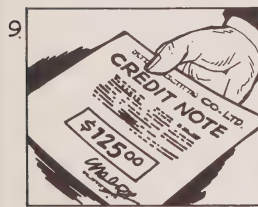
and give you a cash refund.



Some stores will not give you a cash refund.



Some stores will exchange the item for something different.



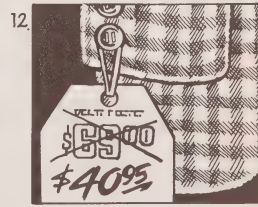
Some stores will give you a credit note, to buy something else.



The credit note is good for a certain time.



When you buy an item, read the sales receipt. It tells about refunds and exchanges.



Usually, if the item is on sale, no refund or exchange is possible.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Winter Clothing



It's important to dress warmly in winter. Otherwise parts of your body can freeze.



A scarf helps. In extreme cold, you might need a balaclava.



Body heat goes out through your head. Wear a hat or hood and cover your ears.



Wear clothes that keep body heat in. Wool and down are good materials.



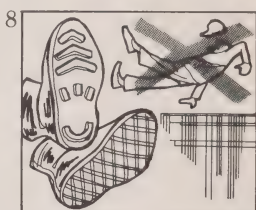
Layers of clothing also help keep in body heat,



for example: long underwear, tights, and sweaters.



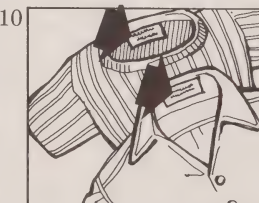
Wear boots with a warm lining and/or one or two pairs of socks.



Buy boots that have traction on the bottom so you don't slip on the ice.



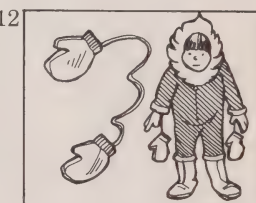
Wear gloves or mitts. Mitts are usually warmer than gloves.



Look at the labels. Natural materials like cotton and wool are warmer than synthetics.



Remember that the cold will affect your body more if there is a wind.



For your child you can get a snowsuit. You can attach mitts on a string so they won't get lost.

GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION: Plural Nouns



Don't touch
the shoes.

Singular (one):



Plural (two or more):



shoes



shoes

2. How to write the plural:

a. We usually add **s** to the singular noun.

shoe

clock

shoe

s

clock

s

watch

address

watch

es

address

es

3. The plural ending **s** is sometimes pronounced (z), for example:

a.  shoes

b.  sweaters

c.  pencils

d.  gloves

e.  bags

4. The plural ending **es** is pronounced (iz), for example:

j.  watches


k.  lunches

l.  buses

m.  dresses

n.  addresses

5. The plural ending **s** is sometimes pronounced (s), for example:

f.  caps

g.  hats

h.  clocks

i.  coats

6. Some nouns have irregular plurals, for example:



man



woman



child



men



women



children

Listen. Circle what you hear, a or b.

1. a.  b. 	2. a.  b. 	3. a.  b. 	4. a.  b. 	5. a.  b. 
6. a.  b. 	7. a.  b. 	8. a.  b. 	9. a.  b. 	10. a.  b. 
11. a.  b. 	12. a.  b. 	13. a.  b. 	14. a.  b. 	15. a.  b. 

Make sentences. Use singular or plural.



Don't touch the shoes.



The answers are on page 129.

EXTRA STUDY: Spelling

1. Some singular nouns end in a consonant followed by **y**.

library factory

2. To make the plural noun, change **y** to **i** and add **es**.

libraries factories



3. Write the plural of each noun below in your notebook.

a. baby e. lady
b. fly f. body
c. butterfly g. spy
d. sky

4. If a vowel precedes the final **y**, keep the **y** and add **s**.

Singular: day boy
Plural: days boys



5. Write the plural of each noun below in your notebook.

a. key d. boy
b. donkey e. toy
c. way f. tray

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

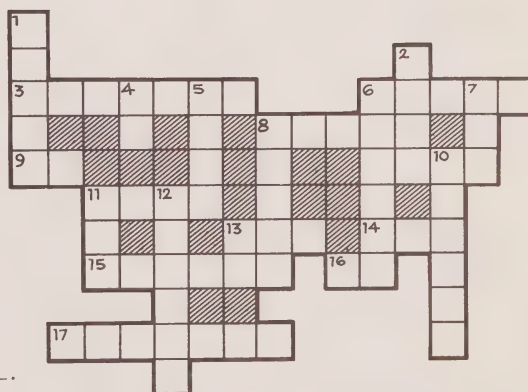
Look in the dictionary, if necessary.

Down:

1. Plural of "woman."
2. Can I ____ you?
4. The feminine pronoun is "she." The masculine pronoun is ____.
5. Part of the body, below the head.
6. Opposite of "open."
7. The number after nine.
8. Plural of "shoe."
10. The number before twelve.
11. You can carry money in this.
12. The same as no. 6 down.
13. Excuse ____.

Across:

3. You can wash your clothes in a washing ____.
6. Plural of "cent."
8. Opposite of "big."
9. Opposite of "yes."
11. Opposite of "front" and part of the body.
13. Plural of "man."
14. Short form of "evening."
15. These keep your hands warm.
16. Short form of "advertisement."
17. You usually need the sales ____ if you want to return an item to the store.



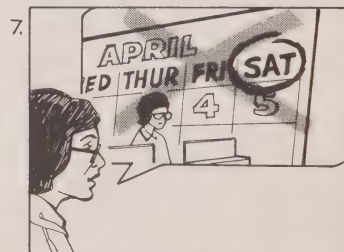
The answers are on page 129.

UNIT 14: IN THE POST OFFICE

CONVERSATION: Ana Goes to the Post Office



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.

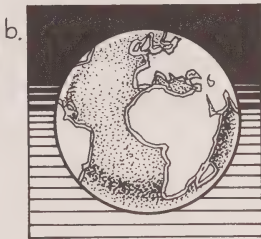


Words for Conversation on page 116.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES



Some people collect stamps.

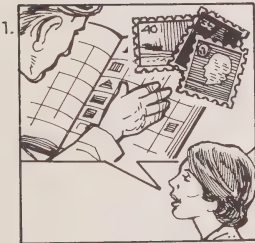


Stamp collecting is a worldwide hobby.



Every year, the Canadian Post Office puts out a souvenir collection of stamps.

Make two conversations:



1. Do you have collectors' stamps?



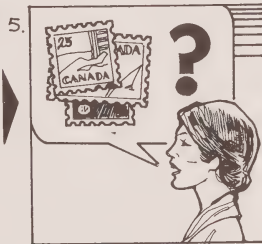
2. Yes. I have the souvenir album for this year.



3. No. I'm sorry we don't.



4. How much is it?



5. Where can I get some?



6. \$24.95.



7. You can write to Ottawa. Here's the address.



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people in your class these questions:
Do you have time for a hobby? (If yes) what is it?
Write the names and answers in your notebook.

VOCABULARY: Stamps



- A. a one-cent stamp

B. a five-cent stamp

C. a ten-cent stamp

D. a twenty-five cent stamp
- E. a thirty-two-cent stamp

F. a thirty-seven-cent stamp

G. a sixty-four-cent stamp

H. a one-dollar stamp

Note that there is no s on the word cent. We don't make it plural.



COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Buying Stamps

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.

A.

Ask your partner for stamps.
You can say:
I need (four 32-cent stamps).

B.

Tell A the cost, for example:
That's (\$1.28).

Here are more examples.	
Five 32-cent stamps	\$1.60
One 32-cent stamp and one 37-cent stamp	.69
Three 64-cent stamps	1.92
Ten 64-cent stamps	6.40
Two 37-cent stamps	.74

READING AND WRITING: Customs Declaration

Ana sent a package to her parents in Chile. Here is some of the information that she put on the customs declaration form.

1. Name and Address of Sender Ana Pinto 21 Main St. Toronto M6Z 2P2 Ontario Canada			2. Name and Address of Addressee SRA. Gladys de Pinto Avenida Huérfanos 1778 Santiago, Chile			
3. Weight of Parcel		4. Declared Total Value \$ 51.00	6. Value		7. Net Weight	
kg	g					
1	750					
5. No. of Items	Detailed List of Contents	\$	¢	kg	g	
1 1	pair shoes blouse	35 16	00 00	1	500 250	
8. Sender's Instructions in Case of Non-delivery						
a. Unless disposal instructions are given, the parcel will be returned without notice at sender's expense.						
b. If delivery of this parcel cannot be effected, dispose of it as checked below:						
9 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Return to origin (at sender's expense)			a <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> by surface b <input type="checkbox"/> by air			
10 <input type="checkbox"/> Deliver or redirect to ► a <input type="checkbox"/> by surface b <input type="checkbox"/> by air			Name and Address _____ _____			
11 <input type="checkbox"/> Treat the parcel as abandoned						

You want to send a package. Fill out this information for yourself.

1. Name and Address of Sender			2. Name and Address of Addressee			
3. Weight of Parcel		4. Declared Total Value \$	6. Value		7. Net Weight	
kg	g					
5. No. of Items	Detailed List of Contents	\$	¢	kg	g	

USEFUL INFORMATION: Registered Mail



You are sending a package or letter to your friend by mail.



You want to be sure that it arrives.



You can register it. You can say: "I'd like to register this."



You pay money for registration and insurance. Keep the receipt.



The mail carrier hands the package to whoever answers the door.



That person signs his or her name.



If no one is at home,



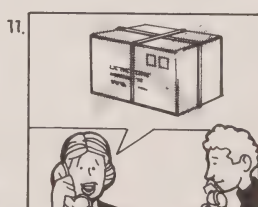
the mail carrier writes out a "Delivery Notice."



He leaves it for your friend.



Your friend takes it to the post office and gets the package.



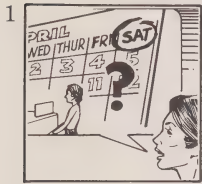
If your friend doesn't get the package,



you take the receipt to the post office and fill out a form to get the insurance money.

Some items can't be sent by registered mail, for example: cash, precious metal or precious stones. If you have any questions, ask at the post office.

GRAMMAR: Yes and No Questions with Is and Are



Statement: The post office **is** open on Saturday.
 Question: **Is** the post office open on Saturday?



Statement: You **are** tired.
 Question: **Are** you tired?

3. How to make questions with the verb be. Put the form of the verb be in front.



4. Make questions with Is.



Is he from Toronto?







Make questions with Are.



Are you hurt?







The answers are on page 130.

PRONUNCIATION: Is he vs. He is

1. The voice falls at the end of a statement.

He's from Toronto.

2. The voice usually rises at the end of a Yes or No question.

Is he from Toronto? Yes

3. However, the voice can sometimes fall at the end of a Yes or No question.

Is he from Toronto?

4. If the voice falls at the end of a Yes or No question, it can sound almost like a statement. Note that in a question, the **h** in the word **he** is often not pronounced. **Is he** is pronounced (izē).

Statement: He's from Toronto.

Question: Is he from Toronto?
(izē).

5. Listen. Circle what you hear, a question or a statement.

1a ?
b .

2a ?
b .

3a ?
b .

4a ?
b .

5a ?
b .

6a ?
b .

7a ?
b .

8a ?
b .

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

1. Four thirty-two-cent stamps please.
2. That's a dollar twenty-eight.
3. Thank you.
4. How much is this?

5. Two-fifty.
6. Are you open on Saturday?
7. No. I'm sorry. We're not.

Other Sentences You May Hear


Picture 4: How much does this cost to mail?
How much will this cost to mail?

Picture 6: Is the post office open on Saturday?
Are you open on Saturdays?

UNIT 15: OCCUPATIONS


VOCABULARY: For the Conversation

1




musician

2




instruments

3




piano

4



clarinet


5




painter

CONVERSATION: Tony and Lou Talk About Their Occupations

a.




b.




First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.

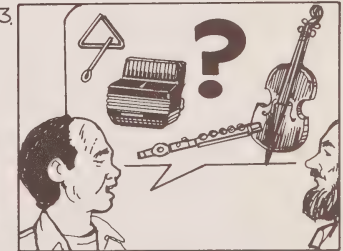
1.



2.



3.



4.



5.

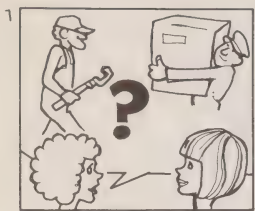


6.



Words for the Conversation on page 119.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Looking for Good Service



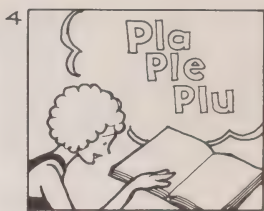
If you need a good plumber or mover, ask your friends.



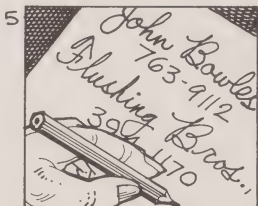
If your friends don't know any, there are other things you can do.



You can look in the Yellow Pages telephone directory.



The services are listed in alphabetical order.*



Write down two or three names and telephone numbers.



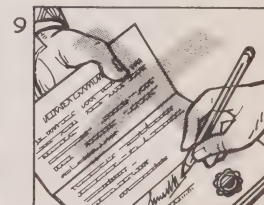
You can call these people and get two or three different prices.



You can also ask the Better Business Bureau if a company has had complaints.



If someone comes to your door to sell you a service,





don't sign anything right away. Take time to think about it.

* If you can't find the service, look in the index. In the Toronto Yellow Pages directory, there are two parts. Each part has a separate index.

In the White Pages directory, there is a section at the back which lists government services. These pages are blue.

READING: The Yellow Pages

Look in your Yellow Pages telephone book. Find these services and write the page numbers.

1.  
Opticians . . .
Optometrists, page _____

2. 
Dentists, page _____

3. Plumbing, page _____

4. Moving, page _____

5. Television Sales
and service, pages _____

6. Other _____, page _____

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. What kind of work did you do in Portugal? | 4. Piano and clarinet. |
| 2. I was a musician. | 5. What about you? |
| 3. What instruments did you play? | 6. I was a painter in China. |

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: What did you do in Portugal?
What was your job in Portugal?



SPEAKING ACTIVITY: Occupations

- Tony's occupation is "musician." Can you say your occupation in English? If not, look in the dictionary or ask your teacher.
- Ask different people in your class what kind of work they did in their own country. You can say:

Where are you from?

or

What country are you from?
and

What did you do in (Portugal)?

or

What kind of work did you do in
(Portugal)?



In your notebook, write the name of each person, their country, and their occupation.

NAME

COUNTRY

OCCUPATION

READING: Advertisements from the Yellow Pages

Read these ads.

A



**EMERGENCY
TELEVISION
SERVICE**

**BROWN'S
ELECTRONICS**

10 YEARS
EXPERIENCE

**FAST
REPAIRS
CITY-WIDE**

**24 HOURS
7 DAYS A WEEK**

T.V. TECHNICIANS
CERTIFIED BY ONTARIO
DEPARTMENT OF LABOUR

Written Guarantee
Reasonable Rates

123 • 9799

B

**MAIN
STREET TV**

SERVICE • SALES • RENTALS

REPAIRS TO ALL MAKES •

ADMIRAL • GE • MAGNAVOX •
QUASAR • SONY • TOSHIBA •
ZENITH • AND MANY MORE...

HOME SERVICE 9am. - 8pm.

ITEMIZED WRITTEN GUARANTEE

3590 MAIN ST.

SALES 321-4567

SERVICE 999-8888

ESTABLISHED 1960

Answer these questions.

1. You want to buy a television. Where do you go?
2. Your television is broken. It's 10:00 p.m. Who do you call?
3. You have a Quasar television which is broken.
 - a. Who do you call?
 - b. What number do you call?
4. It's 7:00 p.m. Your television is broken and you want someone to come to your house to fix it. Who can you call?
5. You want to rent a television set for a period of time. Who do you call?
6. You want your television set fixed by someone who has a certificate from the Ontario Department of Labour. Who do you call?
7. Your television is broken. You want the company with the most experience. Who do you call?

The answers are on page 130.

GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION: The Past Tense



1 I was a musician in Portugal.



2 What instruments did you play? [in Portugal]



3 I played piano and clarinet. [in Portugal]

4. **Was** is a past tense form of the verb **be**. **Played** is the past tense form of the verb **play**.
5. How to form the regular past tense form: add **ed** or **d** to the base form of the verb.

a. Base form: **play**

Past form: **play ed**

b. Base form: **live**

Past form: **live d**

6. Here are some more sentences in the past tense.

Lou Lou was born in China.
He lived in China until he was 27 years old.
He worked in Peking.

7. Some verbs have irregular past tense forms, for example:
Base form: go have come eat
Past form: went had came ate
See page 131 for more examples.

Ana Ana was born in Chile.
She lived with her mother and father in Chile.
She came to Canada alone.

8. Tell about yourself:

You I _____
I _____
I _____

9. The past ending **ed** or **d** is sometimes pronounced (t), for example:

a. help	helped
b. work	worked
c. like	liked
d. walk	walked
e. look	looked
f. touch	touched
g. watch	watched

10. The past ending **ed** or **d** is sometimes pronounced (d) for example:

h. call	called
i. live	lived
j. play	played
k. turn	turned
l. spell	spelled
m. study	studied
n. try	tried

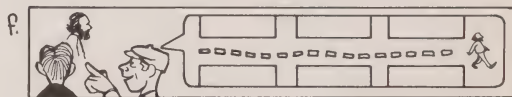
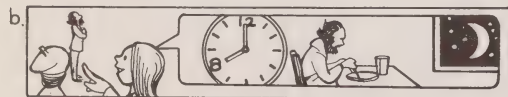
11. The past ending **ed** is pronounced (id) after **t** or **d** for example:

o. repeat	repeated	q. want	wanted
p. visit	visited	r. need	needed

12. Last night Tony was very busy. What did he do last night?

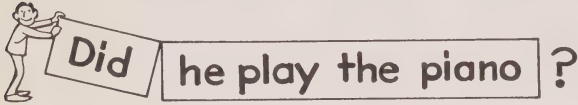


He worked until 7:30



The answers are on page 130.

13. To make past tense questions with all verbs except **be**, put **Did** before the noun or pronoun. Use the base form of the verb.



14. Here are some statements and questions in the past.

a. She ate lunch Did she eat lunch?
b. I worked. Did you work?

Answers:
Yes/No. Yes she did/No she didn't.
Yes/No. Yes I did/No I didn't.

15. Make questions in the past tense.



The answers are on page 130.

16. Find out how many people in your class watched television last night, and how many people went to bed after midnight.

PRONUNCIATION: Pronouns in Past Tense Questions

1. **Did he** is often pronounced (didē).

What instruments did he play?
Did he play the piano?


2. **Did you** is sometimes pronounced (didjü), (didjə), or (didyə).

What instruments did you play?
Did you play the clarinet?

3. Listen to each sentence
that the teacher says.


Which pronoun do you hear —
a, b or c. Write a, b or c.

a.




he

b.



she

c.



you


- 
4. ____ 5. ____ 6. ____ 7. ____ 8. ____ 9. ____ 10. ____ 11. ____ 12. ____

PRONUNCIATION: The Past vs. The Present

Sometimes the past tense ending is difficult to hear.

now


13 a.



He looks sick.

last night


13 b.



He looked sick.

now


14 a.




I live on Queen St.

in 1980

14 b.



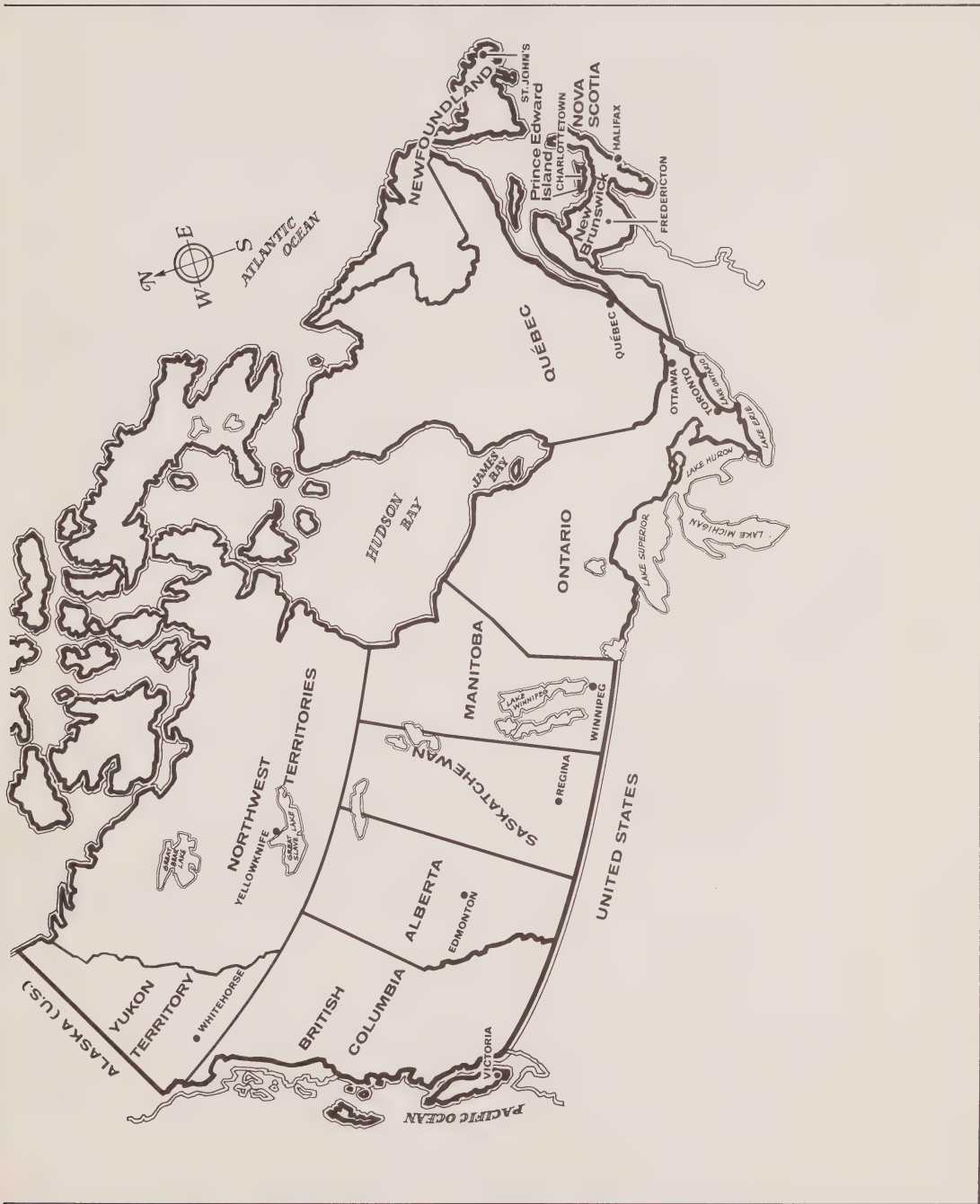
I lived on Queen St.



Listen to each sentence that the teacher says. Which do you hear,
a. the present tense, or b. the past tense? Write a or b.

15. ____ 16. ____ 17. ____ 18. ____ 19. ____ 20. ____ 21. ____ 22. ____ 23. ____

MAP OF CANADA

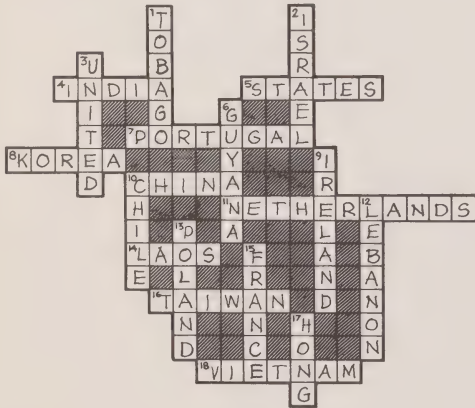


ANSWER KEY

Page 7

- | | |
|-------------|---------------------|
| 29 Chile | 17 Lebanon |
| 13 China | 23 Netherlands |
| 1 England | 26 Northern Ireland |
| 30 France | 20 Pakistan |
| 18 Germany | 8 Philippines |
| 22 Greece | 16 Poland |
| 9 Guyana | 7 Portugal |
| 6 Hong Kong | 11 Scotland |
| 5 India | 12 South Africa |
| 28 Iran | 25 Soviet Union |
| 24 Israel | 27 Taiwan |
| 10 Italy | 19 Trinidad-Tobago |
| 4 Jamaica | 2 United States |
| 14 Korea | 3 Vietnam |
| 15 Laos | 21 Yugoslavia |

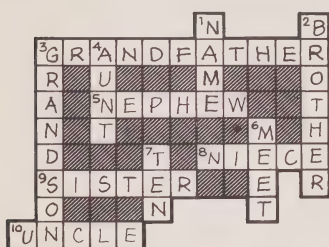
Page 8



Page 27

- 3B. grandmother
3C. grandfather
3D. mother
3E. father
3G. brother
- 4A. son
4C. husband
4D. daughter-in-law
4F. grandson
4G. grandson

Page 28



Page 29

- 2.B 3.A 4.E 5.C 6.G 7.F

Page 35

- c. 1 (2) 3 d. (1) 2 e. 1 (2) 3 4
f. (1) 2 3 g. 1 (2) 3 4 h. 1 (2) 3 4
i. (1) 2 j. 1 (2) 3 k. (1) 2

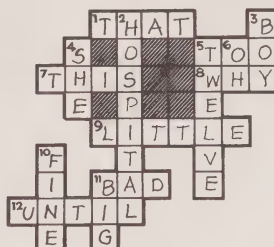
Page 39

Tony: 1. How's your little boy?
Lou: 3. He's still in the hospital.
Tony: 5. That's too bad.

Page 41

- 3b. I was at work last night.
c. She was at the hospital last night.
d. She was at work last night.
e. He was at work last night.
f. I was at the hospital last night.

Page 43



Page 51

- 4b. I live on King Street.
c. I have change.
d. I work on Main Street.
f. I don't live on King Street.
g. I don't have change.
h. I don't work on Main Street.

Page 52

- 2.b 3.h 4.d 5.c 6.f 7.a 8.g

Page 59

- c. (1) 2 d. 1 (2) e. (1) 2
f. (1) 2 g. (1) 2 h. 1 (2)
i. (1) 2 j. (1) 2 k. (1) 2

ANSWER KEY

Page 60

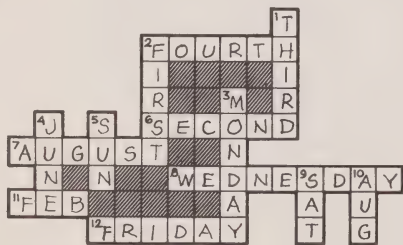
Here are some possible answers:

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| 2. English | 16. Polish |
| 3. Vietnamese | 17. Arabic |
| 4. English | 18. German |
| 5. Hindi, Punjabi | 19. English |
| 6. Chinese | 20. Urdu, Punjabi |
| 7. Portuguese | 21. Serbo-Croatian |
| 8. Tagalog | 22. Greek |
| 9. English | 23. Dutch |
| 10. Italian | 24. Hebrew |
| 11. English | 25. Russian |
| 12. Afrikaans, English | 26. English |
| 13. Chinese | 27. Chinese |
| 14. Korean | 28. Persian |
| 15. Lao | 29. Spanish |
| | 30. French |

Page 67

- 5c. He works until five-thirty.
d. She works until six.
f. He lives on King Street.
g. He lives on Simcoe Street.
h. She works on College Street.

Page 70



Page 73

3. No 4. Yes 5. 5C 6. 5A 7. No
8. Yes 9. 5B 10. 5C 11. No

Page 75

- 5b. Does she live on Main Street?
c. Does he work on Peter Street?
d. Does he live on Queen Street?
f. Does the bus go to College Street?
g. Does the bus go to Queen Street?
h. Does the bus go to King Street?

Page 78

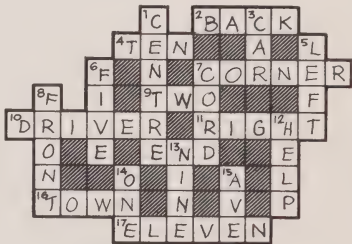
- 5c. Where does she live?
d. Where does he work?
e. Where does she work?
f. Where do you live?

Page 80

- c. 1 (2) 3 d. (1) 2 e. 1 (2) 3 4
f. (1) 2 3 g. 1 (2) 3 4 h. 1 (2) 3 4
i. (1) 2 j. 1 (2) 3 k. (1) 2

Page 81

- 2.A 3.E 4.B 5.F 6.D



Page 88

- c. the fourth floor
- d. the fourth floor
- e. the first floor
- f. the second floor
- g. the fifth floor
- h. the third floor
- i. the sixth floor
- j. the sixth floor
- k. the second floor
- l. the second floor

Page 89

- 4b. Where's the elevator?
- c. Where's the coffee-shop?
- d. Where's the telephone?
- f. What's your address?
- g. What's your postal code?
- h. What's your telephone number?

Page 91

- c. ① 2 3 d. ① 2 3 e. ① 2 3
- f. ① 2 3 4 g. 1 ② 3 4 h. ① 2 3
- i. ① 2 3 4 j. ① 2 3 k. ① 2 3 4 5

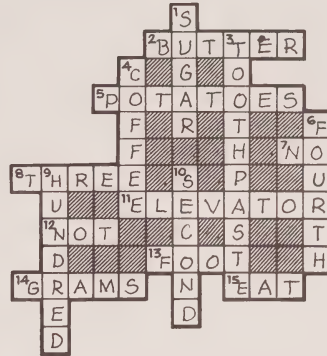
Page 96

- 6c. She likes coffee.
- d. She doesn't like tea.
- e. She likes milk.
- f. She doesn't like butter.
- g. He likes cereal.
- h. He doesn't like bread.

Page 97

- 9b. I don't have a pencil.
- c. He doesn't have change.
- d. She doesn't have a telephone.
- e. I don't have a watch.
- g. He doesn't work on King St.
- h. She doesn't work on Monday.
- i. I don't work on Main St.
- j. He doesn't work on Sunday.

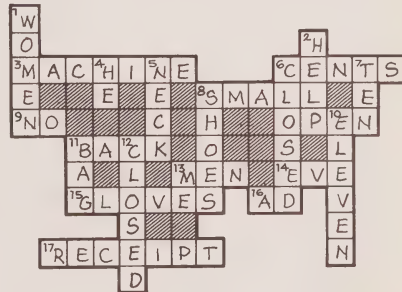
Page 99



Page 108

- b. Don't touch the telephone.
- c. Don't touch the dresses.
- d. Don't touch the gloves.
- e. Don't touch the clock.
- f. Don't touch the hats.
- g. Don't touch the pencils.
- h. Don't touch the coat.

Page 109



ANSWER KEY

Page 115

- 4b. Is she tired?
- c. Is the washroom one floor up?
- d. Is the library one floor down?
- f. Are you from Toronto?
- g. Are you tired?
- h. Are you from Ottawa?

Page 120

- 1. to Main Street TV
- 2. Brown's Electronics
- 3. a. Main Street TV
b. 999-8888
- 4. Brown's Electronics or
Main Street TV
- 5. Main Street TV
- 6. Brown's Electronics
- 7. Main Street TV

Page 122

- 12b. He ate at eight o'clock.
- c. He watched television.
- d. He played the piano.
- e. He played the clarinet.
- f. He walked three blocks.
- g. He visited friends.
- h. He called the hospital.

Page 123

- 16c. Did she watch television?
- d. Did you play the piano.
- e. Did she play the clarinet?
- f. Did he walk three blocks?
- g. Did they visit friends?
- h. Did you call the hospital?

APPENDIX

IRREGULAR VERBS

SIMPLE FORM

be
become
begin
bite
blow
break
bring
build
burn
buy
catch
choose
come
cost
cut
do
draw
dream
drink
drive
eat
fall
feel
fight
find
fly
forget
get
give
go
grow
hang
have
hear
hide
hit
hold
hurt
keep
know
lead
learn
leave

PAST FORM

was, were
became
began
bit
blew
broke
brought
built
burnt (burned)
bought
caught
chose
came
cost
cut
did
drew
dreamt
drank
drove
ate
fell
felt
fought
found
flew
forgot
got
gave
went
grew
hung
had
heard
hid
hit
held
hurt
kept
knew
led
learnt (learned)
left

SIMPLE FORM

lend
let
lie
lose
make
mean
meet
put
read
rid
ride
run
say
see
sell
send
set
shoot
show
sing
sit
sleep
smell
speak
spend
spread
stand
steal
stick
swim
take
teach
tear
tell
think
throw
try
understand
wake
wear
win
write

PAST FORM

lent
let
lay
lost
made
meant
met
put
read
rid
rode
ran
said
saw
sold
sent
set
shot
showed
sang
sat
slept
smelt (smelled)
spoke
spent
spread
stood
stole
stuck
swam
took
taught
tore
told
thought
threw
tried
understood
woke
wore
won
wrote

INTRODUCTION TO PART 2

In Part 2 you will find out more about Ana Pinto, Tony Faria, and the Wong family: Lou, Su Ping, Ken and David; and starting in Unit 23, they will be real people in photographs, instead of illustrations. You will also find the language and the activities in Part 2 more challenging.

Here are some of the contents in Part 2:

UNIT	TITLE OF UNIT	TITLE OF CONVERSATION OR PHOTO STORY
16	YOUR FIRST JOB	Ana's First Job
17	INSISTING ON SAFETY	Ana Insists on Safety
18	MAKING COMPLAINTS	Lou's Family in the Restaurant
19	CALLING IN TO REPORT ABSENCE	Ana Calls in Sick
20	DAYCARE FOR YOUR CHILD	Su Ping Calls a Daycare Centre
21	IN THE DRUGSTORE	Getting a Prescription Filled
22	SUBJECTS AT SCHOOL	A Parent-Teacher Interview
23	INVITATION	A Neighbour Invites Ana in for Coffee
24	SOCIAL VISIT	Ana and Her Neighbour
25	JOB UPGRADING	Ana Talks to Her Employer
26	UNEMPLOYMENT INSURANCE	Tony is Out of Work
27	LOOKING FOR WORK	Tony Looks for a Job
28	APPLYING FOR A JOB	Tony Gets a Job
29	IN THE DOCTOR'S OFFICE	Tony Gets His Medical
30	GETTING A MISTAKE CORRECTED	Ana's Pay Cheque is Wrong
31	LOOKING FOR A ROOM	Ana Has to Move
32	TAKING A TRIP	The McMichael Canadian Collection



Ministry of
Citizenship

Ontario

D2166 1/89 29M (Rep)
ISBN 0-7743-9384-X

CA20N
CI
-W21
PT.1

Citizenship
and Culture



Government
Publications

Affaires civiques
et culturelles

Welcome to Canadian English

A basic handbook for
students living in Ontario

Part 1



Affaires civiques
et culturelles

Welcome to Canadian English

A basic handbook for
students living in Ontario

Part 1



Authors: Lillian Butovsky/Esther Podoliak



Credits

Assistance with editing, writing and co-ordinating: John McHugh
Illustrations: Ken Gray, Advertising
Design: H. Bruce Dorland & Assoc.
Stamps on page 112 reproduced courtesy of Canada Post Corporation.

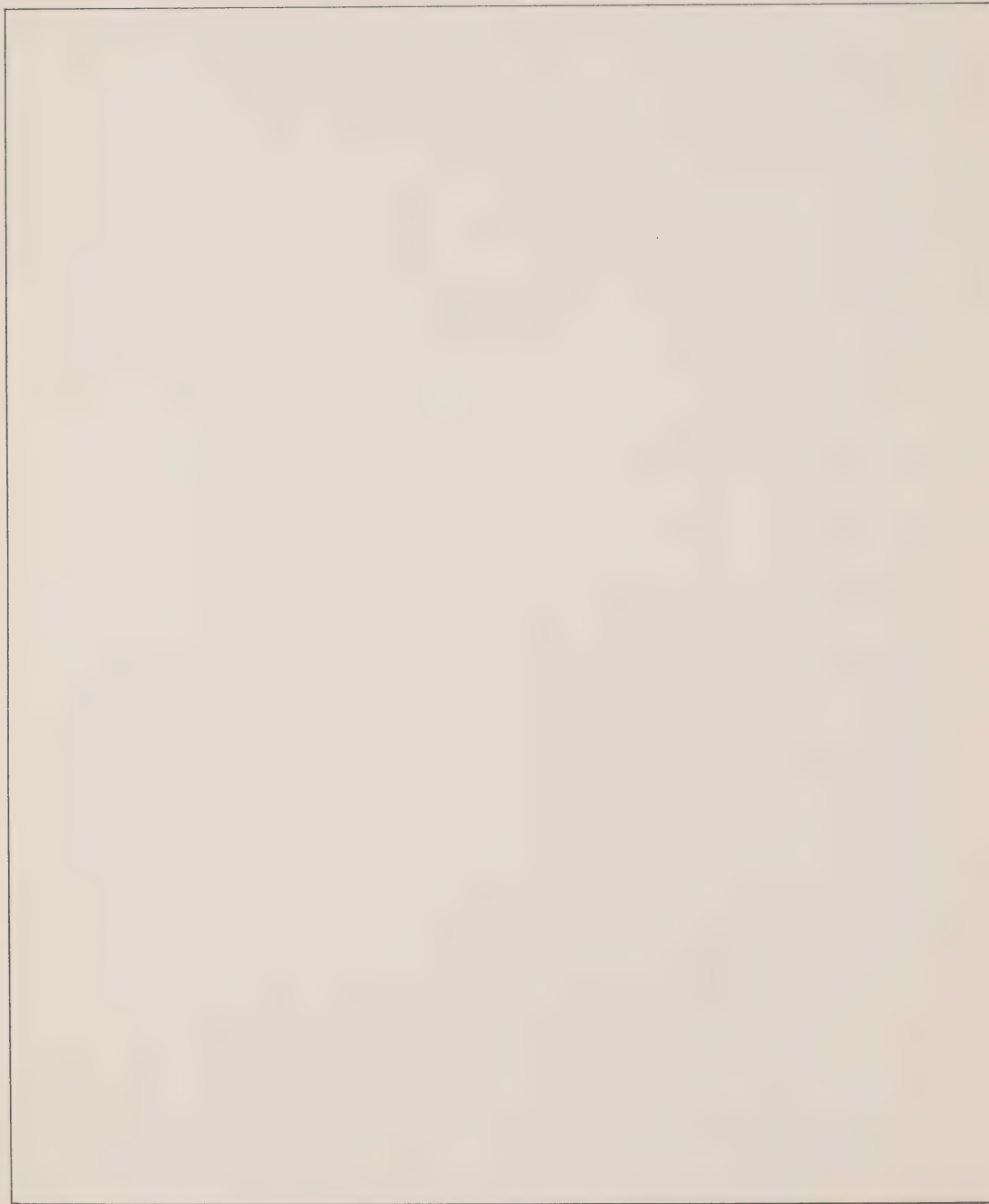
Published by the
Ministry of Citizenship and Culture.
Funded by the Federal Department of the
Secretary of State.
Printed by the Queen's Printer
for Ontario
Province of Ontario
Toronto, Canada

© 1984 Government of Ontario

Copies available from the
Ontario Government Bookstore,
880 Bay St., Toronto
for personal shopping.
Out-of-town customers write to
Publications Services Section,
5th Floor, 880 Bay St., Toronto, Ontario,
M7A 1N8. Telephone 965-6015.
Toll free long distance 1-800-268-7540;
in Northwestern Ontario 0-Zenith 67200.

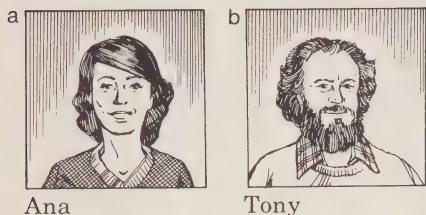
CONTENTS

	Page
UNIT 1: SELF-INTRODUCTIONS	1
UNIT 2: GETTING CHANGE	9
UNIT 3: PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION	15
UNIT 4: INTRODUCTION OF OTHERS	21
UNIT 5: EMERGENCIES	30
UNIT 6: SAYING HOW YOU FEEL	36
UNIT 7: TELLING THE TIME	45
UNIT 8: GETTING HELP WITH ENGLISH	53
UNIT 9: TALKING ABOUT CALENDAR TIME	61
UNIT 10: FINDING YOUR WAY AROUND	71
UNIT 11: GETTING DIRECTIONS INSIDE	82
UNIT 12: SHOPPING FOR GROCERIES	92
UNIT 13: SHOPPING FOR CLOTHES	100
UNIT 14: IN THE POST OFFICE	110
UNIT 15: OCCUPATIONS	117
MAP OF CANADA	125
ANSWER KEY	127
APPENDIX: IRREGULAR VERBS	131
INTRODUCTION TO PART 2	132

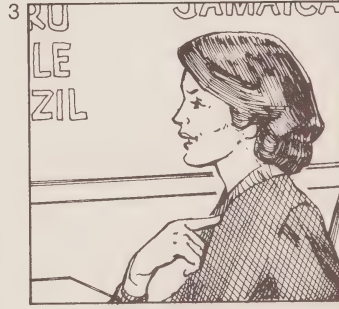
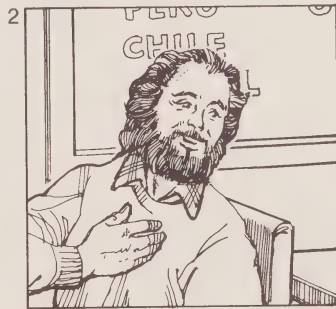


UNIT 1: SELF-INTRODUCTIONS

CONVERSATION: Tony Meets Ana



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Hello.



I'm Tony.



I'm Ana.



Nice to meet you.



Where are you from?



Chile.

Other Sentences You May Hear

You can say the same thing in more than one way. For example, in Picture 1, Tony can say "Hi" instead of "Hello." Here are some other examples.

Picture 2: My name is Tony.

Picture 3: My name is Ana.

Picture 4: Glad to meet you.

Picture 5: What country are you from?

THE ENGLISH ALPHABET

There are 26 letters in English. Learn to spell your name in English.

Printed in Books

Printed by Hand

Written

	Capital Small		Capital Small		Capital Small	
1.	A	a	A	a	A	a
2.	B	b	B	b	B	b
3.	C	c	C	c	C	c
4.	D	d	D	d	D	d
5.	E	e	E	e	E	e
6.	F	f	F	f	F	f
7.	G	g	G	g	G	g
8.	H	h	H	h	H	h
9.	I	i	I	i	I	i
10.	J	j	J	j	J	j
11.	K	k	K	k	K	k
12.	L	l	L	l	L	l
13.	M	m	M	m	M	m
14.	N	n	N	n	N	n
15.	O	o	O	o	O	o
16.	P	p	P	p	P	p
17.	Q	q	Q	q	Q	q
18.	R	r	R	r	R	r
19.	S	s	S	s	S	s
20.	T	t	T	t	T	t
21.	U	u	U	u	U	u
22.	V	v	V	v	V	v
23.	W	w	W	w	W	w
24.	X	x	X	x	X	x
25.	Y	y	Y	y	Y	y
26.	Z	z	Z	z	Z	z



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people in your class what their names are. You can say:

What's your name?

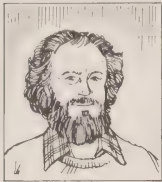
Please spell it. (or Please write it.)



Write each name in your notebook.

READING AND WRITING: Names and Titles on a Form

Here is Tony's name.



A

Tony	José	Faria
First name	Middle name	Last name

Here is Ana's name.



B

Ana	Sara	Pinto
First name or Given name	Middle name or Given name	Last name or Family name or Surname

Here are more
names from
different
countries.

C

First name	Middle name	Family name
1. Nam	Thi	Nguyen
2. Peter		Kowalski
3. Samuel	Americo	Rodriguez
4. Yung Chiang		Su
5. Inder Pal		Sagoo



Fill this form
out. Use your
own name.

D

_____	_____	_____
First name	Middle name	Last or Family name.

Here is Tony's
name again, in
block letters.

E

	PRINT IN BLOCK LETTERS											
FAMILY OR LAST NAME	F	A	R	I	A							
FIRST AND MIDDLE NAME	T	O	N	Y		J	O	S	É			



Fill this form
out. Use your
own name.

F

	PRINT IN BLOCK LETTERS											
FAMILY OR LAST NAME												
FIRST AND MIDDLE NAME												

This is Ana's family.



This is Ana Pinto. This is Miss Pinto or Ms. Pinto.



This is Ana's mother, Gladys Pinto. This is Mrs. Pinto or Ms. Pinto.



This is Ana's father, Ricardo Pinto. This is Mr. Pinto.

Learn these titles.

- Mr. is pronounced Mister.
- Mrs. is pronounced Missuz.
- Miss is pronounced Miss.
- Ms. is pronounced Miz.

Here is Ana's name and title on a form.

A	Surname (family name)	Please print	Initials	<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Ms.
	P I N T O			



Fill this form out for yourself.

B	Surname (family name)	Please print	Initials	<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Ms.

GRAMMAR: The Verb Be



Long form
(for formal writing)

I	am	Tony.
---	----	-------


Short form
(for speaking and informal writing)


I'm	Tony.
-----	-------

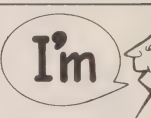
I'm Tony

The short form: what happens

I am

I  am
--


I  m

 I'm
--

"I" is a personal pronoun.

"Am" is a form of the verb be.

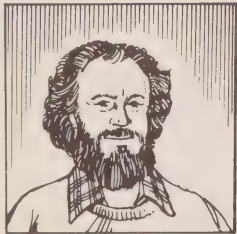
Pronoun and verb together:

 I

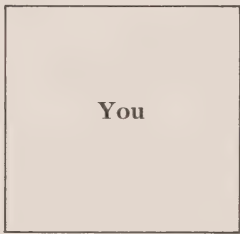
am

I am

I'm



I'm Tony.
I'm from Portugal.



You

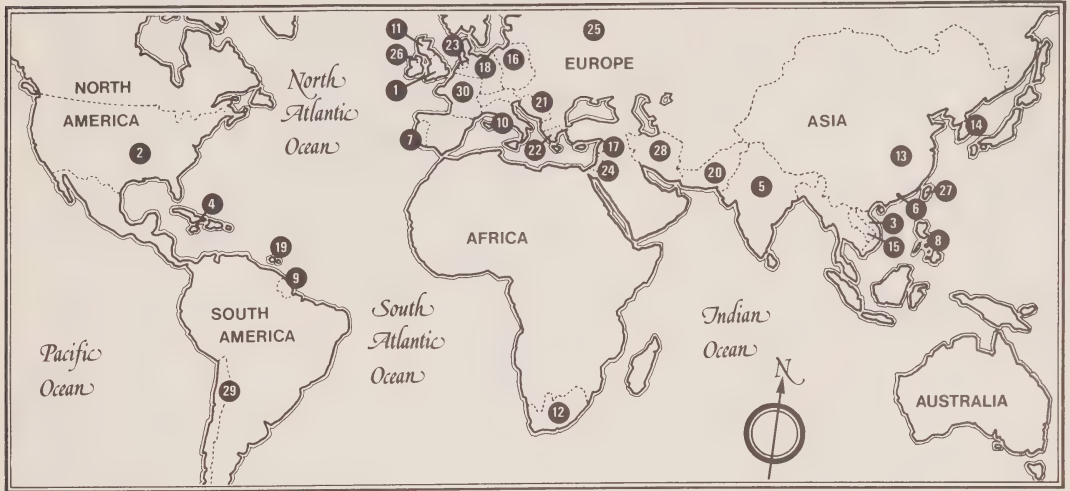
Tell about yourself.



I'm Ana.
I'm from Chile.



EXTRA STUDY: Immigration to Ontario



People come to Ontario from many countries. The numbers on the map are the 30 places that most immigrants came from in the years 1977 to 1981. Below are the names of the places. Match the number to the name and put the number in the box. The lower the number, the higher the immigration. For example, 32,788 immigrants came from country number 1 (England), and 1,539 immigrants came from number 30 (France).

<input type="text" value="29"/>	Chile	<input type="text"/>	Israel	<input type="text"/>	Poland
<input type="text"/>	China	<input type="text"/>	Italy	<input type="text"/>	Portugal
<input type="text"/>	England	<input type="text"/>	Jamaica	<input type="text"/>	Scotland
<input type="text"/>	France	<input type="text"/>	Korea	<input type="text"/>	South Africa
<input type="text"/>	Germany	<input type="text"/>	Laos	<input type="text"/>	Soviet Union
<input type="text"/>	Greece	<input type="text"/>	Lebanon	<input type="text"/>	Taiwan
<input type="text"/>	Guyana	<input type="text"/>	Netherlands	<input type="text"/>	Trinidad-Tobago
<input type="text"/>	Hong Kong	<input type="text"/>	Northern Ireland	<input type="text"/>	United States
<input type="text"/>	India	<input type="text"/>	Pakistan	<input type="text"/>	Vietnam
<input type="text"/>	Iran	<input type="text"/>	Philippines	<input type="text"/>	Yugoslavia

The answers are on page 126.

Spelling Practice



Look at the map on page 7. Write each number in your notebook.



Beside each number, write the name of the country.



Look at the names on page 7. Correct your spelling.

Examples:

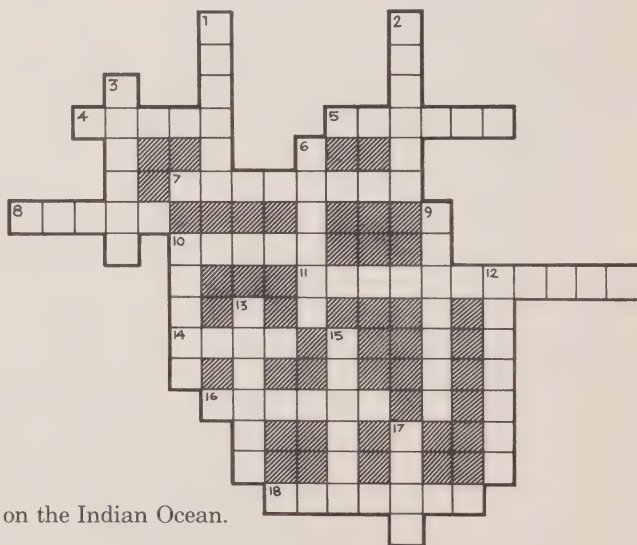
1. England
2. U.S.A.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Look on page 7, if necessary.

Down

1. Trinidad- ____
2. A country in the Middle East.
3. ____ States.
6. A country in South America.
9. Northern ____
10. Another country in South America.
12. A country on the Mediterranean Sea.
13. A country East of Germany.
15. A country in Europe famous for cuisine.
17. ____ Kong.



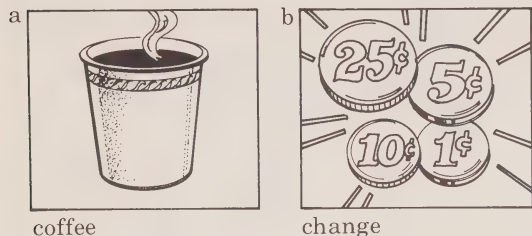
Across

4. A country on the Indian Ocean.
5. United ____
7. A country on the Atlantic Ocean, west of Spain.
8. A country near Japan.
10. A large country in Asia.
11. A country in Europe on the North Sea.
14. A country in Asia between Thailand and Vietnam.
16. A country near Hong Kong.
18. A country on the South China Sea.

The answers are on page 126.

UNIT 2: GETTING CHANGE

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



CONVERSATION: Ana asks for Change



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



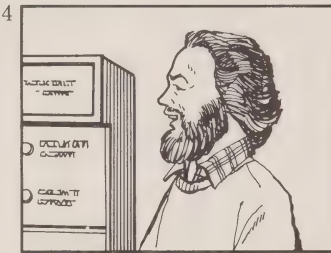
Do you have change?



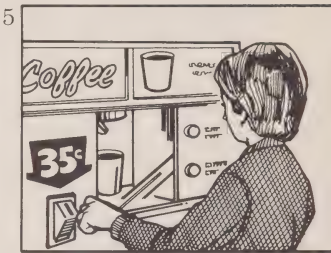
Yes. Here.



Thank you.



You're welcome.







Other Sentences You May Hear

- Picture 1: Can you give me change?
Can you give me change for a dollar?
Can you change a dollar?
- Picture 2: Yes. Here you are.
- Picture 3: Thanks. (INFORMAL)

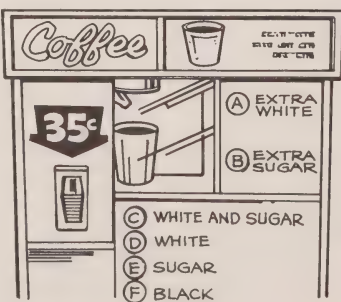
READING: Coffee Machine




Which buttons do you press on the coffee machine?
Match the word(s) to the picture and put the letter in the box.

1 C  +  + 

2  + 

3  + 



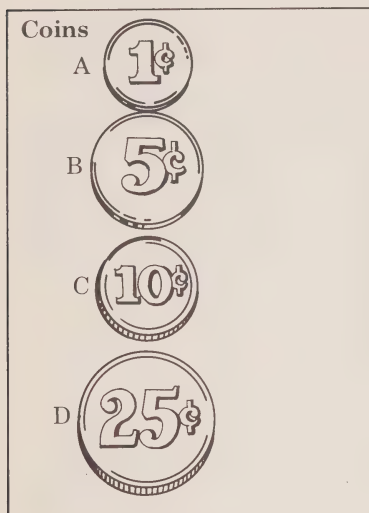
4  +  + 

5 

6  +  + 

The answers are on page 126.

VOCABULARY: Coins and Bills



- A. a cent or a penny
- B. a nickel
- C. a dime
- D. a quarter
- E. a dollar bill
- F. a two-dollar bill
- G. a five-dollar bill
- H. a ten-dollar bill
- I. a twenty-dollar bill
- J. a fifty-dollar bill



COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Getting Change

Ask other people in the class for change. You can say:
Do you have change for (a dollar)?

The other person answers:

Yes. Here. or No. I'm sorry. I don't.

NUMBERS: Zero to One Hundred

A. Numbers Zero to Thirty-Nine

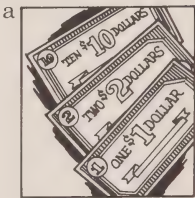
0 Zero	10 Ten	20 Twenty	30 Thirty
1 One	11 Eleven	21 Twenty-one	31 Thirty-one
2 Two	12 Twelve	22 Twenty-two	32 Thirty-two
3 Three	13 Thirteen	23 Twenty-three	33 Thirty-three
4 Four	14 Fourteen	24 Twenty-four	34 Thirty-four
5 Five	15 Fifteen	25 Twenty-five	35 Thirty-five
6 Six	16 Sixteen	26 Twenty-six	36 Thirty-six
7 Seven	17 Seventeen	27 Twenty-seven	37 Thirty-seven
8 Eight	18 Eighteen	28 Twenty-eight	38 Thirty-eight
9 Nine	19 Nineteen	29 Twenty-nine	39 Thirty-nine

B. Numbers Forty to One Hundred

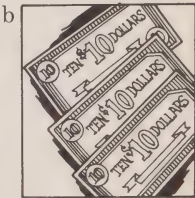
40 Forty	50 Fifty	60 Sixty	70 Seventy
80 Eighty	90 Ninety	100 One Hundred	

PRONUNCIATION

13 and 30 sound almost the same.
Listen. Which do you hear, a or b?
Write a or b.



\$13.00



\$30.00



1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

If you don't know whether someone is saying 13 or 30, ask:
Is that **one three** or **three zero**?

GRAMMAR: Questions with Do

1. Ana is asking a question.



Do you have change?

2. This is how you make a question.

a. Take the words

you have change

b. Add the word do.



Do you have change ?

3. Make questions.

a



Do you have a quarter ?

b



c

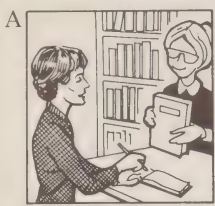


d



The answers are on page 126.

EXTRA STUDY: Writing Cheques



Ana bought a book at Black's Bookstore for \$11.95. Here is the cheque she wrote.

THE BANK OF BELLEVILLE
109 WATER STREET

PAY TO THE ORDER OF

Feb. 11 1984

Black's Bookstore \$ 11.95

Eleven ⁹⁵/₁₀₀ DOLLARS

RE 16501 Ana Pinto

B You bought a book at Black's Bookstore for \$8.00. Complete this cheque.

THE BANK OF BELLEVILLE
109 WATER STREET

PAY TO THE ORDER OF

Feb. 25 1984

\$

DOLLARS

RE 15942

Write these amounts

C \$18.95

Black's Bookstore \$

DOLLARS

D \$22.00

Black's Bookstore \$

DOLLARS

E \$42.50


Black's Bookstore \$

DOLLARS


Check your spelling of the amounts on page 12.

UNIT 3: PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION


VOCABULARY: For the Conversation

a


(to) work

b


(to) work

c

Ana lives at 21 King St.
Betty lives at 23.

d

number

e

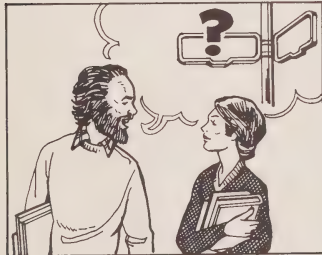
King Street


CONVERSATION: Walking Home


f


g


First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.


1

2

3

4

5

6

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Where do you live?



On King Street.



Really? I work on King Street.



What number?



Forty.



I live at number twenty-one.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: What street do you live on?

Picture 3: I have a job on King Street.
I'm working on King Street.

PRONUNCIATION

I. Walk and work sound almost the same.

Listen. Which do you hear, a or b?



I walk
on King St.



I work
on King St.

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

II. 14 and 40 sound almost the same.

Listen. Which do you hear, a or b?



14 King Street



40 King Street

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____ 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____

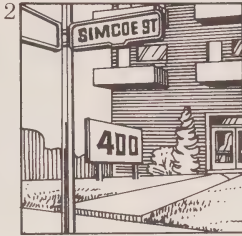
If people don't hear you, say each digit separately:

14 one four 40 four zero

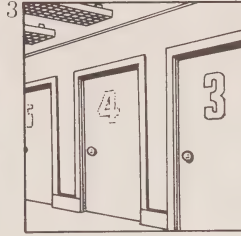
READING AND WRITING: Addresses



Ana lives in a house at 21 King Street.



Tony lives in an apartment building at 400 Simcoe Street.



Tony's apartment number is 3.

Where do you live, in a house or an apartment? _____

Tony received a letter from his friend Samuel. This is the envelope.

Samuel A. Rodriguez
715 Main St.
Collingwood, Ont.
L9Y 1X0

Mr. Tony J. Faria
400 Simcoe St. East
Apt 3
Toronto, Ontario
M4K 2G2

1. first name
2. initial
3. last name
4. street
5. apartment number
6. city or town
7. province
8. postal code
9. return address

You have written a letter to Tony. Write the envelope for it.
Use your own return address.

Tony filled out these forms.

A

PLEASE PRINT ☒ Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Miss ☐ Ms.

Tony J. Faria

First Name Initial Last Name

400 Simcoe St. E. 3

Number Street Apt. Number

Toronto Ontario

City or Town Province

M4K 2G2

Postal Code

B

PLEASE PRINT ☒ Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Miss ☐ Ms.

NAME Tony J. Faria

ADDRESS 400 Simcoe St. E, Apt. 3

CITY AND PROVINCE Toronto, Ontario

POSTAL CODE M4K 2G2

Fill out these forms with information about yourself.

C

PLEASE PRINT ☐ Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Miss ☐ Ms.

First Name Initial Last Name

Number Street Apt. Number

City or Town Province

Postal Code

D

PLEASE PRINT ☐ Mr. ☐ Mrs. ☐ Miss ☐ Ms.

NAME

ADDRESS

CITY AND PROVINCE

POSTAL CODE



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people their name and where they live. You can say:
What's your name? Where do you live, in a house or apartment?

Write each name here and check (✓) house or apartment.

Name	House	Apartment	Name	House	Apartment
Ana	✓				
Tony		✓			

GRAMMAR: Questions with Where

1. Tony is asking a question.



Where do you live?

2. There are two kinds of questions.

Yes or no questions:		Do you have change?	
		Do you work on King St.?	
Question-word questions:	Where	do you live?	
	Where	do you work?	

Answers: Yes or No

Answers: on Simcoe St.
on King St.

3. Make question-word questions.



Where do you live ?



Where do you work ?





Make statements.



I live on King Street.







The answers are on page 126.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

Look in the dictionary, if necessary.

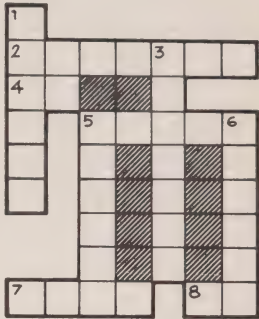
Down

- 1. The name of this country.
- 3. The language you are learning.
- 5. The number after ten.
- 6. The number after eleven.

Across

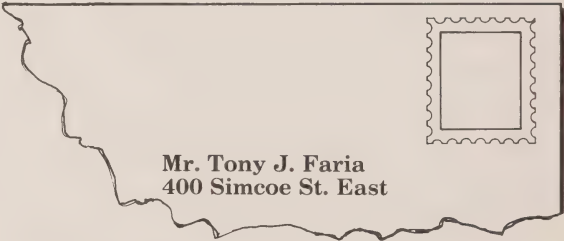
- 2. The number and name of your street is your ____.
- 4. The opposite of "yes."
- 5. The number before nine.
- 7. The number before ten.
- 8. "She" is a feminine pronoun.
____ is a masculine pronoun.

The answers are on page 126.



EXTRA STUDY: Kinds of Streets and Abbreviations

Tony lives on Simcoe Street. "St." is the abbreviation for "Street." We use the abbreviation when we write an address.



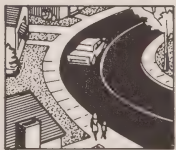
Here are kinds of streets.



A. Street
or
B. Road



C. Avenue
or
D. Boulevard



E. Crescent



F. Court
or
G. Square

Here are the abbreviations. Match the kind of street to the abbreviation.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> D. Blvd. | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> St. | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> Rd. |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Sq. | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Ave. | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Cres. |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Crt. | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> R.R. | |



H. Rural Route

UNIT 4: INTRODUCTION OF OTHERS

CONVERSATION: Ana Meets Lou



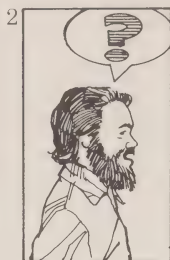
First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Hello Ana.



How are you?



Fine thanks.



How are you?



Fine.



This is Lou.



Lou, this is Ana.



Nice to meet you.



Oh.



I'm sorry.



That's okay.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 7: Lou, I'd like you to meet Ana.

Picture 8: Glad to meet you.

Pleased to meet you.

Hi. (INFORMAL)

Hello.

Picture 11: That's all right.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES: Introducing Others

Make two conversations.



1. This is Lou.

2. Lou, this is Ana.

3. She's from Chile.

5. Nice to meet you.

4. She's in my class.

Here is one conversation from the Extension.

Tony: 1. This is Lou.

2. Lou, this is Ana.

3. She's from Chile.

Ana: 5. Nice to meet you.

Look at the Extension and write another conversation in your notebook.
The second conversation is on page 126.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Photos From Home

Bring a photograph of someone to class. Tell who that person is and say one thing about him or her, for example:

This is my friend.
She's from Laos.

This is Albert Einstein.
He's a famous scientist.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Social Insurance Number



Tony has a social insurance card.



His social insurance number (SIN) is on the card.



He needs the number to work.



He needs the number for unemployment insurance.



Lou has a social insurance number, too.

READING AND WRITING:
Application for a Social Insurance Number

Lou got his application for a social insurance card at a Canada Employment Centre. Here is part of the form.

1	FIRST NAME Hsi An (Lou)	MIDDLE NAME	PRESENT FAMILY NAME (SURNAME) Wong
2	DATE OF BIRTH DAY MONTH YEAR 3 8 44	DO NOT WRITE HERE	3
4	SEX MALE <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> FEMALE <input type="checkbox"/>		
5	PLACE OF BIRTH Canton, China	6	SURNAME AT BIRTH Wong
7			
8	FATHER'S FIRST NAME Wu Liu	9	HAVE YOU EVER BEFORE APPLIED FOR OR RECEIVED A SOCIAL INSURANCE NUMBER YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
10	IF YES WRITE YOUR NUMBER HERE		DON'T KNOW <input type="checkbox"/>
11	DATE 2/4/75	12	MARITAL STATUS SINGLE <input type="checkbox"/> MARRIED <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>
13	STATUS IN CANADA CANADIAN CITIZEN <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PERMANENT RESIDENT <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>		
14	APPLICANT'S WRITTEN SIGNATURE Lou Wong		

Fill this out with information about yourself.

1	FIRST NAME	MIDDLE NAME	PRESENT FAMILY NAME (SURNAME)
2	DATE OF BIRTH DAY MONTH YEAR	DO NOT WRITE HERE	3
4	SEX MALE <input type="checkbox"/> FEMALE <input type="checkbox"/>		
5	PLACE OF BIRTH	6	SURNAME AT BIRTH
7			
8	FATHER'S FIRST NAME	9	HAVE YOU EVER BEFORE APPLIED FOR OR RECEIVED A SOCIAL INSURANCE NUMBER YES <input type="checkbox"/> NO <input type="checkbox"/>
10	IF YES WRITE YOUR NUMBER HERE		DON'T KNOW <input type="checkbox"/>
11	DATE	12	MARITAL STATUS SINGLE <input type="checkbox"/> MARRIED <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>
13	STATUS IN CANADA CANADIAN CITIZEN <input type="checkbox"/> PERMANENT RESIDENT <input type="checkbox"/> OTHER <input type="checkbox"/>		
14	APPLICANT'S WRITTEN SIGNATURE		

GRAMMAR: The Verb Be



Long form
(for formal writing)

She is from Chile.

Short form
(for speaking and
informal writing)

She's from Chile.

She's from Chile.

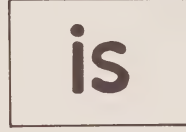
2 The short form: what happens



3 She and he are personal pronouns.



Is is a form of
the verb be.



Pronoun
and verb together:

She is

She's

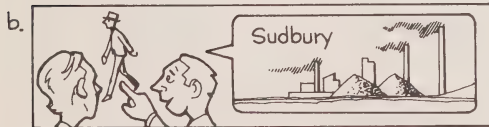
He is

He's

4 Make sentences.



She's from Chile.



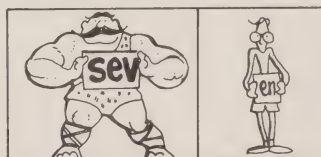
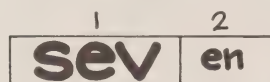
The answers are on page 126.

PRONUNCIATION

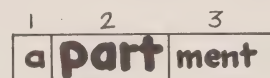
1. Look at this word. It has two parts. The parts are called syllables.



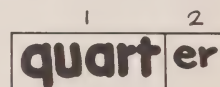
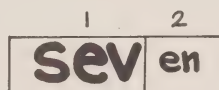
2. The first part or syllable is strong. We say it louder.



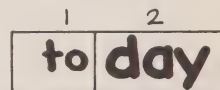
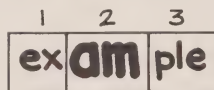
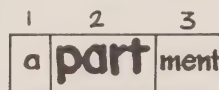
3. Look at this word. It has three syllables. The second syllable is strong. We say it louder.



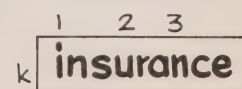
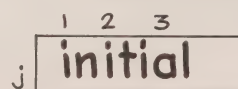
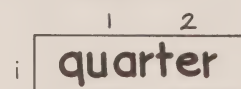
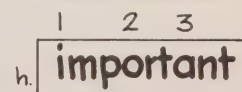
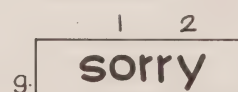
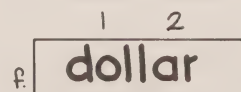
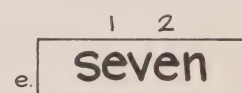
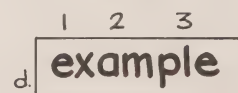
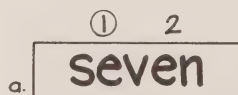
4. The first syllable of these words is strong:



5. The second syllable of these words is strong:



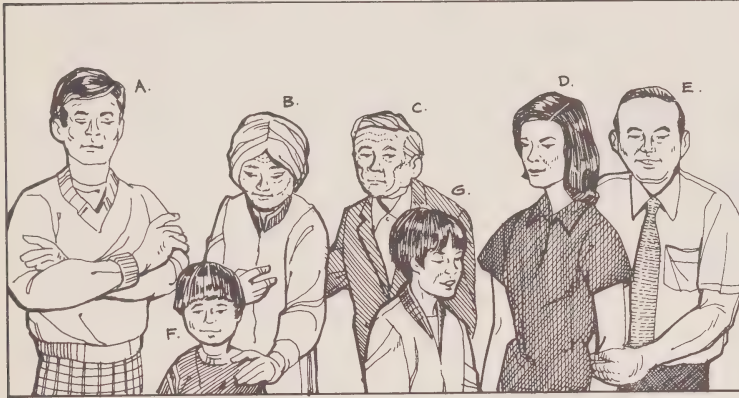
6. Listen to these words. Circle the number of the strong syllable.



The answers are on page 126.

EXTRA STUDY: The Family

This is Lou's family.

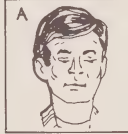


1. I'm Lou.



A is my brother.
B is my mother.
C is my father.
D is my wife.
F is my son.
G is my son.

2. I'm Lou's brother.



G is my nephew.
F is my nephew.
D is my sister-in-law.

Complete these sentences.

3. I'm Lou's son.



A is my uncle
B is my _____
C is my _____
D is my _____
E is my _____
G is my _____

grandfather
mother
father
grandmother
uncle
brother

4. I'm Lou's mother.

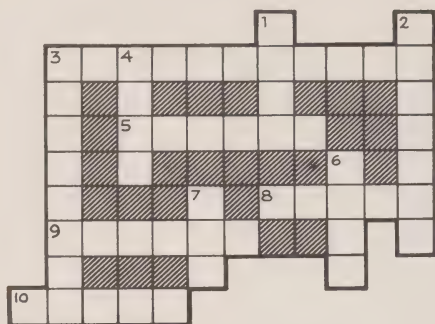


A is my _____
C is my _____
D is my _____
F is my _____
G is my _____

daughter-in-law
husband
son
grandson
grandson

The answers are on page 127.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle



Down

1. My ___ is Ana.
2. This person (male) has the same mother and father as you.
3. Son of your son or daughter.
4. Sister of your mother or father.
6. Nice to ___ you.
7. The number after nine.

Across

3. Father of your father or mother.
5. Son of your brother or sister.
8. Daughter of your brother or sister.
9. This person (female) has the same mother and father as you.
10. Brother of your mother or father.

The answers are on page 127.

EXTRA STUDY: Two-line Dialogues

Complete each dialogue.

- 1 I'm Ana.
- 2 Where are you from?
- 3 Do you have change for a dollar?
- 4 Where do you live?
- 5 How are you?
- 6 Your address please?
- 7 Your telephone number?

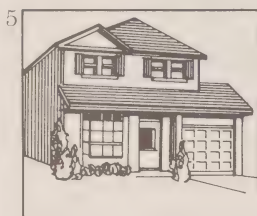
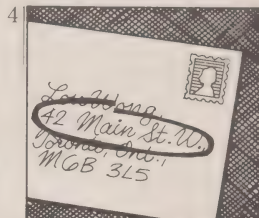
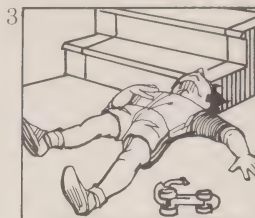
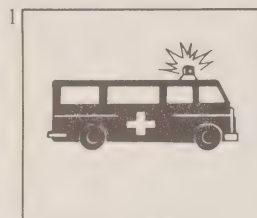
Choose from these sentences.

- A. Yes. Here.
- B. Chile.
- C. Fine thanks.
- D. Nice to meet you.
- E. On King St.
- F. 751-2632.
- G. 42 Main St. West.

The answers are on page 127.

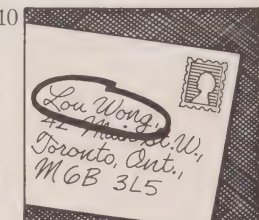
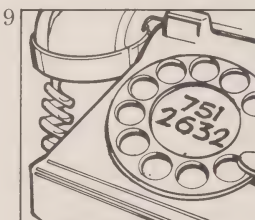
UNIT 5: EMERGENCIES

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



1. ambulance
2. boy
3. hurt
4. address
5. house

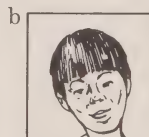
6. apartment
7. number
8. apartment number
9. telephone number
10. name



CONVERSATION: Lou Calls Emergency



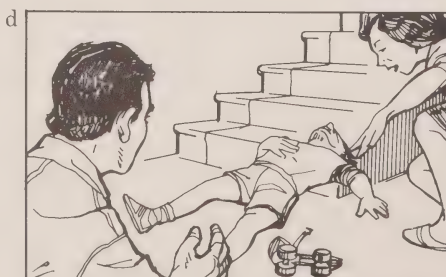
Lou



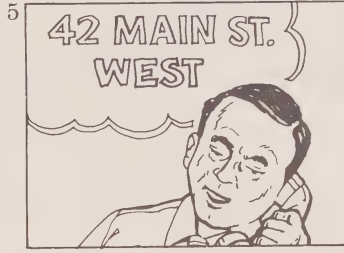
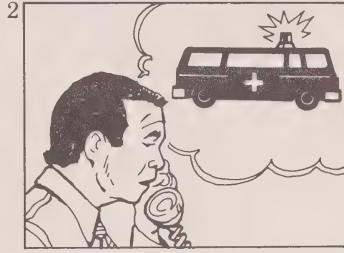
Ken



Su Ping



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Emergency.



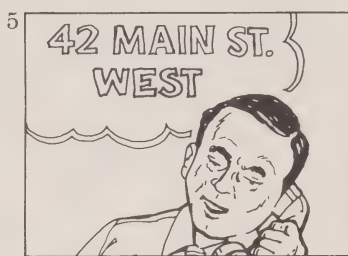
Ambulance, please.



My boy is hurt.



Your address please?



42 Main Street West.



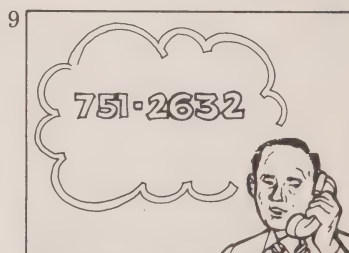
House or apartment?



Apartment, number 301.



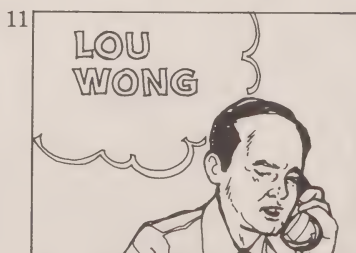
Your telephone number?



751-2632.



And your name?



Lou Wong.



Fine.

Other Questions Policeman May Ask

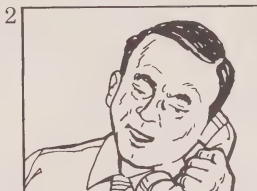
What language do you speak? What's the nearest major intersection? What municipality is that?

SPELLING

Can you spell your name and your street name in English?
This is important.



Please spell your address.



M-A-I-N.

Some alphabet letters are difficult to hear. We use familiar words to help people hear the correct letter.



Please spell it again.



M for Monday -A-I-N.

SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people in your class to spell their name and the name of their street. You can say:

Please spell your name.

Please spell the name of your street.

Write each name and the name of the street here. Then show it to the person. Is it correct?

Ana

King Street

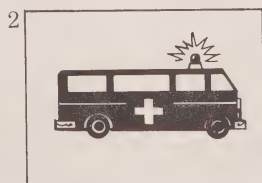
Continue in your notebook.

EMERGENCY TELEPHONE NUMBERS

Write the emergency numbers for your local area. They are in the front of your telephone book.



Fire Department



Ambulance



Police



Poison Information
Centre

USEFUL INFORMATION: If Your Child Swallows Poison



Your child swallows poison.



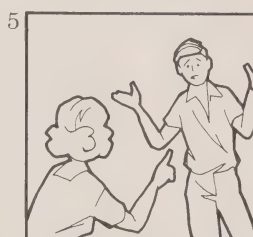
If someone in your house speaks English,



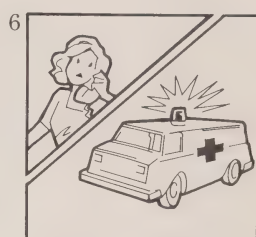
ask that person to call the Poison Information Centre.



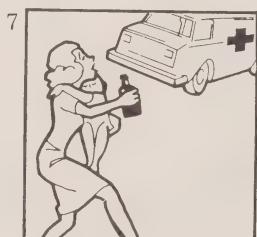
That person will get important information.



If no one in your house speaks English,



call an ambulance.



Take your child AND the poison container.



The ambulance will take you to the Emergency Department of the nearest hospital.



Show the poison container.

For more useful information, read "Newcomers Guide to Services in Ontario." This booklet is free and comes in different languages. It is published by the Ministry of Citizenship and Culture. For information or help, go to an immigrant aid agency. Look in your telephone directory under the name of your nationality, for example "Italian" or "Vietnamese."

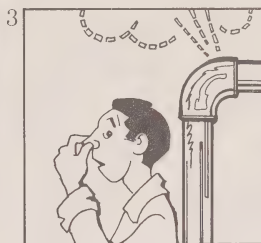
USEFUL INFORMATION: The Fire Department



You call the fire department



if you have a fire



or a gas leak



or if someone is stuck.

PRONUNCIATION

Here are the names of streets you can find in some Ontario cities. Listen to each name and circle the number of the strong syllable.

a. ^{① 2}
Hur on St.

b. ^{1 ② 3 4}
On tar i o Ave.

c. ^{1 2 3}
Mc Ken zie St.

d. ^{1 2}
Sim coe St.

e. ^{1 2 3 4}
Ni a ga ra Ave.

f. ^{1 2 3}
Av e nue Rd.

g. ^{1 2 3 4}
Vic tor i a Ave.

h. ^{1 2 3 4}
E liz a beth St.

i. ^{1 2}
Riv er St.

j. ^{1 2 3}
Mac Don ald St.

k. ^{1 2}
Col lege St.

The answers are on page 127.

Write the name of the street you live on. _____

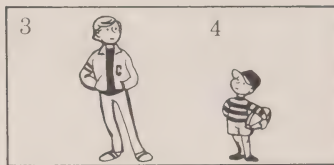
Write the name of the street your school is on. _____

Write the name of two or three streets you use when you come to school. _____

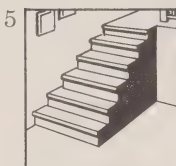
In each street name, show the strongest syllable. Ask your teacher to help you.

UNIT 6: SAYING HOW YOU FEEL

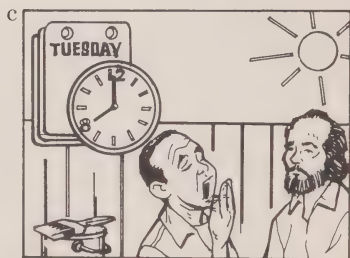
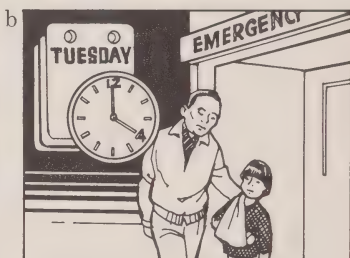
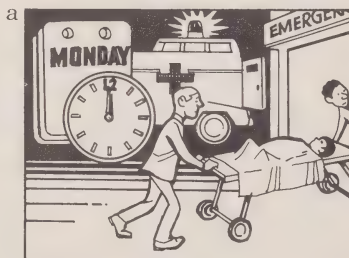
VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



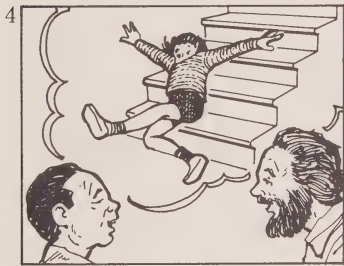
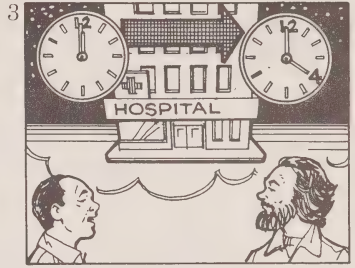
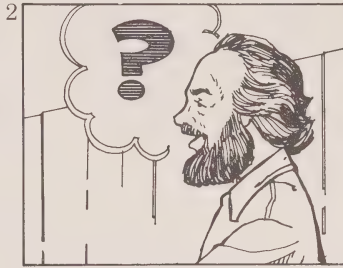
1. tired
2. hospital
3. big
4. little
5. stairs
6. fall down
7. fine



CONVERSATION: Lou is Tired



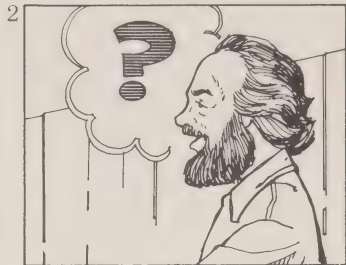
First, look at ALL the pictures.
Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



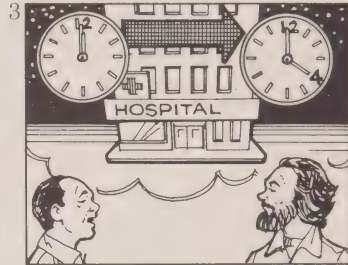
WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



I'm tired.



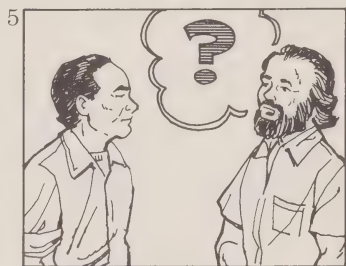
Oh! Why?



I was at the hospital until four.



My little boy fell down the stairs.



How is he now?



He's fine.



That's good.

Other Sentences You May Hear

- Picture 2: Oh! How come? (INFORMAL)
- Picture 5: How's he doing now?
- Picture 7: I'm glad.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES

Make two conversations.



1. How's your little boy?

2. He's fine.

4. That's good.

3. He's still in the hospital.

5. That's too bad.

Here is one conversation from the Extension.

Tony: 1. How's your little boy?

Lou: 2. He's fine.

Tony: 4. That's good.



Look at the Extension and write the other conversation in your notebook.

The second conversation is on page 127.

READING AND WRITING: Ontario Health Insurance Plan



Lou has an OHIP card. It has a number on it.



At the hospital Lou gave this number.



OHIP helps pay the hospital and doctor bills.



OHIP doesn't pay for dental care, except in hospitals.

Lou filled out an application for OHIP. Here are parts of the form.

1	Surname (family name) W O N G		Please print		Initials H A		<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Mr <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs <input type="checkbox"/> Ms	
	Street address 4 2 M A I N S T W						Insert the name by which you are known e.g. Tom, Vera, etc. L O U	
	Apt. no. 3 0 1 1		Name of City/Town, etc. T O R O N T O				Telephone Number - 7 5 1 - 2 6 3 2	
	Province O N T A R I O				Postal code M 3 Q 4 M 4		Date of Birth Day 3 Month 8 Year 4 4	
	Name of present employer S E L F - E M P L O Y E D				Previous OHIP no. (if any)		Marital status <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Single <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Separated <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed <input type="checkbox"/> Other	
Insurable status 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Single premium I have no eligible dependent(s). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Family premium I have eligible dependent(s) (Dependents are not covered if not residing in Ontario, except as indicated in part 2 on the reverse side of the application)								

Fill this out with information about yourself.

1	Surname (family name)		Please print		Initials		<input type="checkbox"/> Miss <input type="checkbox"/> Mr. <input type="checkbox"/> Mrs. <input type="checkbox"/> Ms	
	Street address						Insert the name by which you are known e.g. Tom, Vera, etc.	
	Apt. no.		Name of City/Town, etc.				Telephone Number -	
	Province				Postal code		Date of Birth Day Month Year	
	Name of present employer				Previous OHIP no. (if any)		Marital status <input type="checkbox"/> Married <input type="checkbox"/> Divorced <input type="checkbox"/> Widowed <input type="checkbox"/> Single <input type="checkbox"/> Separated <input type="checkbox"/> Other	
Insurable status 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Single premium I have no eligible dependent(s). <input type="checkbox"/> Family premium I have eligible dependent(s) (Dependents are not covered if not residing in Ontario, except as indicated in part 2 on the reverse side of the application)								

It is important to apply for OHIP as soon as you arrive in Ontario. If you do, your OHIP coverage begins the next month.
You can ask OHIP for help if you can not pay your premiums.
If you get sick before your OHIP coverage starts, you should call or visit an OHIP office.

GRAMMAR: Past Form of the Verb Be



I'm at work now.



I was at the hospital until four last night.

2 **Was** is a past form of the verb **Be**. It is used with the pronouns: **I, He, She**.



He was at the hospital last night.



She was at the hospital last night.



Lou was at the hospital last night.

3 Make sentences with **Was**.



He was at the hospital last night.



Tell about yourself.

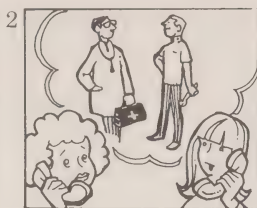
I last night.

The answers are on page 127.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Finding a Doctor or Dentist



Do you need a doctor or dentist?



It's best to ask your friends for the name of a good one.



If your friends can't help you, here are other things you can do.



The College of Family Physicians has names of family doctors.



They will tell you what languages each doctor speaks.



You can also see a doctor in an out-patients clinic at a hospital.



The Ontario Dental Association has names of dentists near your home.



If a doctor or dentist suggests treatment



that you are not sure about, ask questions.



You can also go to another doctor or dentist



and get another opinion.



In a medical or dental emergency, go to a hospital.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

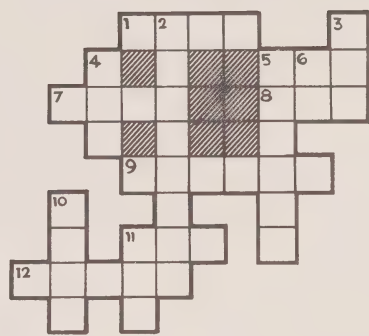
Look in the dictionary if necessary.

Down

2. A place for sick people.
3. A male child.
4. "He" is a masculine pronoun.
— is a feminine pronoun.
5. The number after eleven.
6. A word to show surprise.
10. A word meaning "okay."
11. The opposite of "little."

Across

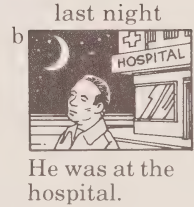
1. The opposite of "this."
5. That's — bad.
7. The opposite of "that."
8. A question word meaning "What's the reason?"
9. The opposite of "big."
11. The opposite of "good."
12. "Till" is the short form of —.



The answers are on page 127.

PRONUNCIATION

Is and was sometimes sound almost the same. Listen. Which do you hear, a or b? Write a or b.



1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

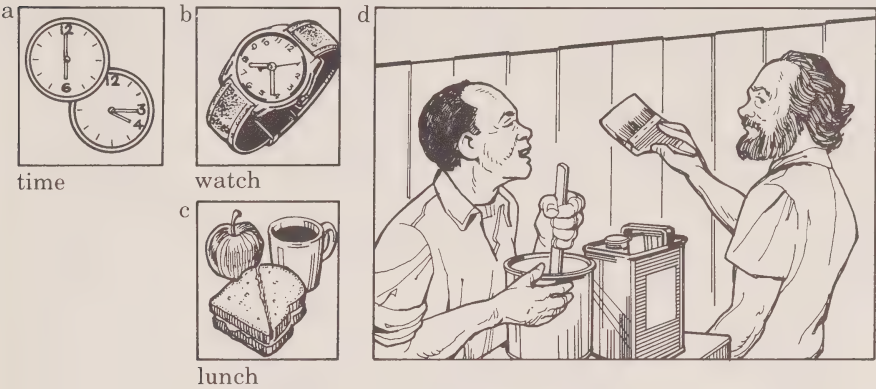
BINGO GAME

- a. Choose 24 items from the list below. Write one item, in pencil, into each box on the Bingo card. Do this in random order.
- b. Listen. When you hear an item, put a check mark in pencil beside it or cover it with a marker.
- c. When you have a row of items checked — either vertical, horizontal or diagonal, call out “Bingo” in a loud voice.

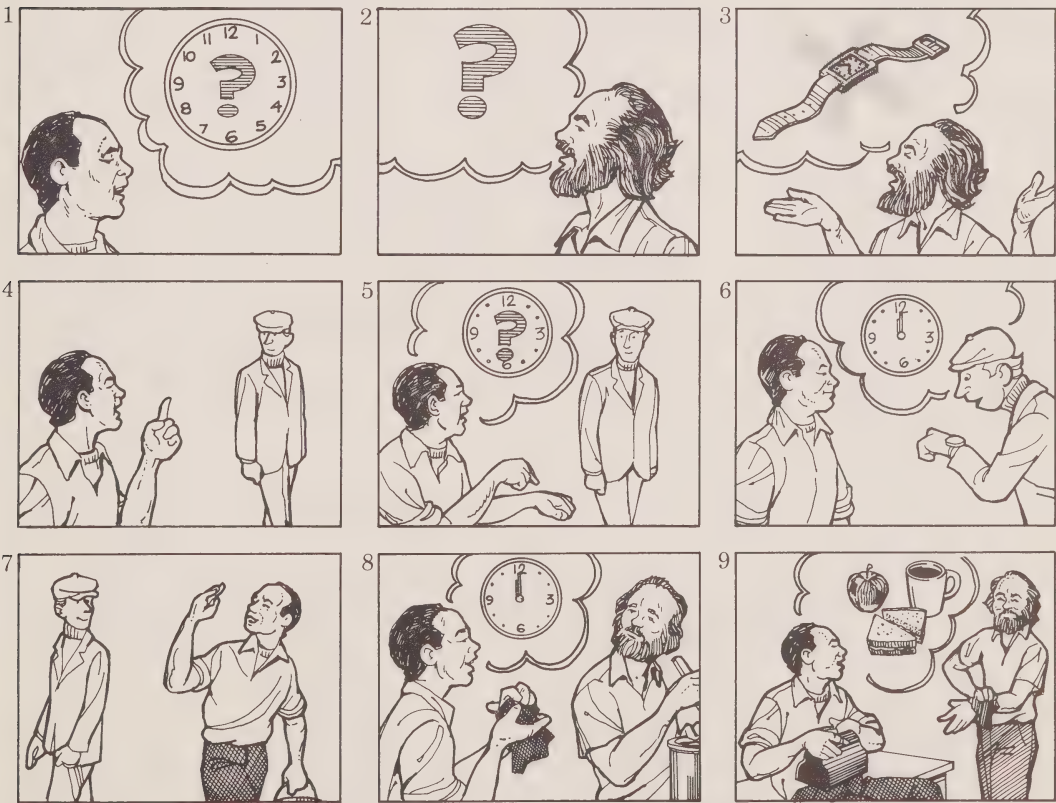
\$14.00	She’s at school.	1403 Main St.
\$40.00	She was at school.	1413 Main St.
\$ 1.15	How is he?	17 King St.
\$ 1.50	How was he?	70 King St.
Queen St.	East	\$16.60
Main St.	West	\$60.16
walk	He’s from Chile.	She’s fine.
work	She’s from Chile.	She’s five.
first name	He’s Tony.	
last name	He is Tony.	

UNIT 7: TELLING THE TIME

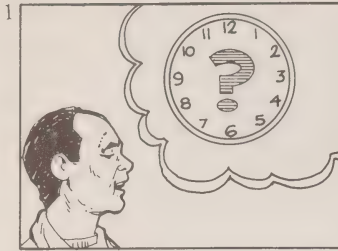
CONVERSATION: Lou Asks for the Time



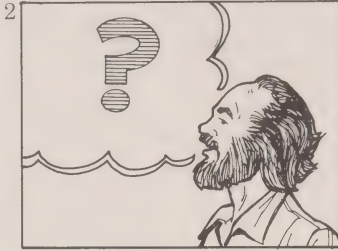
First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



What time is it?



I don't know.



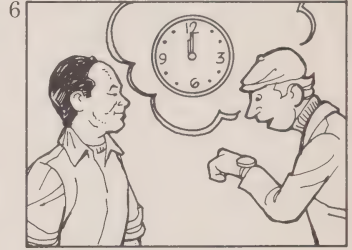
I don't have my watch.



Excuse me.



Do you have the time?



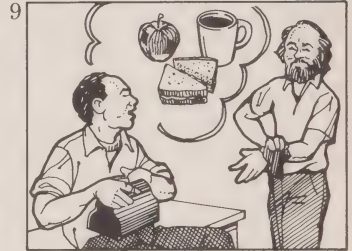
It's twelve o'clock.



Thank you.



It's twelve o'clock.



Time for lunch.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: What's the time?

What time do you have?

Picture 5: Could you tell me the time, please? (MORE FORMAL)

CLOCK TIMES AROUND THE WORLD

Look at the clocks below. The time on each clock is ahead of the time on the Ottawa clock. For example, the time in Rome, Italy is 6 hours ahead of the time in Ottawa. The time in Seoul, Korea is 14 hours ahead of the time in Ottawa.

What time is it? Complete each sentence.



It's one o'clock in Ottawa, Canada.



It's ... in Rome, Italy.



It's ... in London, England.



It's ... in Lisbon, Portugal.



It's eight-thirty in Ottawa, Canada.



It's ... in Athens, Greece.



It's ... in Seoul, Korea.



It's ... in Warsaw, Poland.



It's ten to nine in Ottawa, Canada.



It's ... in Belgrade, Yugoslavia.



It's ... in Jerusalem, Israel.



It's ... in Islamabad, Pakistan.



It's twenty after four in Ottawa, Canada.



It's ... in Beirut, Lebanon.



It's ... in Rome, Italy.



It's ... in London, England.



It's a quarter to five in Ottawa, Canada.



It's ... in Lisbon, Portugal.



It's ... in Athens, Greece.




It's ... in Seoul, Korea.

TELLING TIME


Practise telling the time.

A

A clock face showing 8 o'clock. The hour hand points to 8 and the minute hand points to 12.


eight o'clock

B

A clock face showing 8:02. The hour hand is slightly past 8 and the minute hand points to 2.


two minutes after eight

C

A clock face showing 8:05. The hour hand is slightly past 8 and the minute hand points to 1.


five after eight

D

A clock face showing 8:10. The hour hand is slightly past 8 and the minute hand points to 2.


ten after eight

E

A clock face showing 8:15. The hour hand is slightly past 8 and the minute hand points to 3.


a quarter after eight

F

A clock face showing 8:20. The hour hand is slightly past 8 and the minute hand points to 4.


twenty after eight

G

A clock face showing 8:25. The hour hand is slightly past 8 and the minute hand points to 5.


twenty-five after eight

H

A clock face showing 8:30. The hour hand is halfway between 8 and 9 and the minute hand points to 6.


eight-thirty
or
half past eight

I

A clock face showing 8:35. The hour hand is halfway between 8 and 9 and the minute hand points to 7.


twenty-five to nine

J

A clock face showing 8:40. The hour hand is past 8 and the minute hand points to 8.


twenty to nine

K

A clock face showing 8:45. The hour hand is past 8 and the minute hand points to 9.


a quarter to nine

L

A clock face showing 8:54. The hour hand is almost at 9 and the minute hand points to 9.


fourteen minutes to nine

M

A clock face showing 8:50. The hour hand is almost at 9 and the minute hand points to 10.


ten to nine

N

A clock face showing 8:55. The hour hand is almost at 9 and the minute hand points to 11.


five to nine

O

A clock face showing 8:57. The hour hand is almost at 9 and the minute hand points to 11.

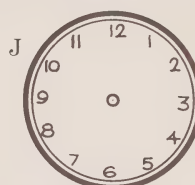
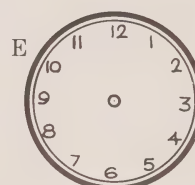
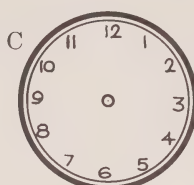
three minutes to nine

P

A clock face showing 9 o'clock. The hour hand points to 9 and the minute hand points to 12.

nine o'clock

 What time is it? Listen. Draw the hands to show the time.



Digital Clocks

Sometimes people tell the time this way.

K  five o'clock

L  five-o-five

M  five-fifteen

N  five-thirty

O  five forty-five

P  five fifty-two

PRONUNCIATION

Listen to the teacher. Circle what you hear, a or b.

1.a. 9:40
b. 9:14

4.a. 2:40
b. 2:14

7.a. It's 7:30.
b. It's 7:13.

10.a. The time is 11:30.
b. The time is 11:13.

2.a. 9:40
b. 9:14

5.a. 2:40
b. 2:14

8.a. It's 7:30.
b. It's 7:13.

11.a. The time is 11:30.
b. The time is 11:13.

3.a. 9:40
b. 9:14

6.a. 2:40
b. 2:14

9.a. It's 7:30.
b. It's 7:13.

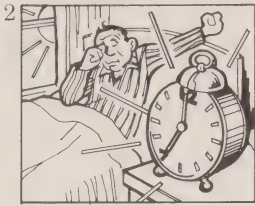
12.a. The time is 11:30.
b. The time is 11:13.

THE TIME OF DAY: Morning, Afternoon and Evening

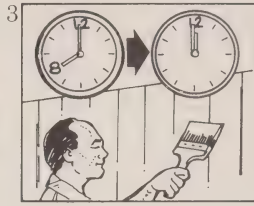
Read this section and answer the questions.



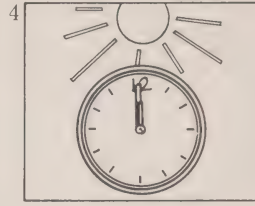
It's morning.



Lou wakes up at seven a.m. What time do you wake up?



Lou works from 8-12. What do you do in the morning?



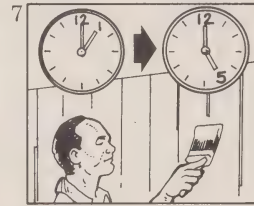
It's 12 noon.



Lou eats lunch at noon. What time do you eat lunch?



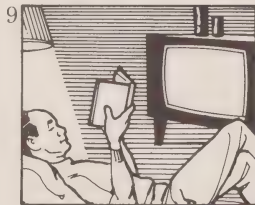
It's afternoon.



Lou works in the afternoon from one to five.



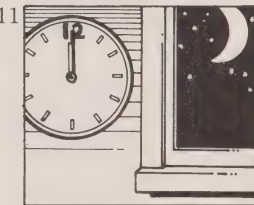
It's evening.



Sometimes Lou reads or watches television.



Sometimes he visits friends. What do you do in the evening?



It's 12:00 midnight.



Lou goes to bed around midnight. What time do you go to bed?

GRAMMAR: Negative Sentences with Don't



Long form

I do not know.

Short form

I don't know.

I don't know.
I don't have
my watch.

2 The short form: what happens

do not

do not

do not

don't

= don't

3 These are **AFFIRMATIVE** sentences.

I know.

I have a watch.

I live on King St.

These are **NEGATIVE** sentences.

I don't know.

I don't have a watch.

I don't live on King St.



4 Make sentences.

I have a watch.I don't have a watch.

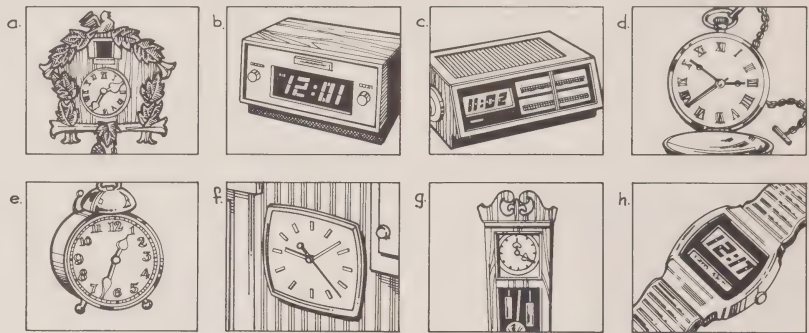
The answers are on page 127.

EXTRA STUDY: Personal Journal

Copy and complete this personal journal to show your typical Saturday.

On Saturday I usually wake up at _____. In the morning I _____. Then I eat lunch at _____. In the afternoon I usually _____. I eat supper at _____. In the evening I usually _____.

EXTRA STUDY: Kinds of Clocks



Match the picture to the word and put the letter in the box.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 <input type="text" value="e"/> alarm clock | 5 <input type="text"/> clock radio |
| 2 <input type="text"/> digital clock | 6 <input type="text"/> wall clock |
| 3 <input type="text"/> digital watch | 7 <input type="text"/> cuckoo clock |
| 4 <input type="text"/> pocket watch | 8 <input type="text"/> grandfather clock |

The answers are on page 127.

Say each word. The syllable written in dark letters is the strong syllable.

alarm **digital** **pocket** **radio** **cuckoo** **grandfather**



Take a partner. You can ask and answer these questions.

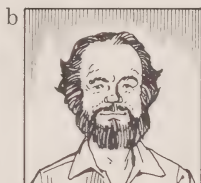
Do you have	{	an alarm clock?	{	Where was it made?
		a digital clock?		or
		a digital watch?		What country was it made in?
		etc.		

UNIT 8: GETTING HELP WITH ENGLISH

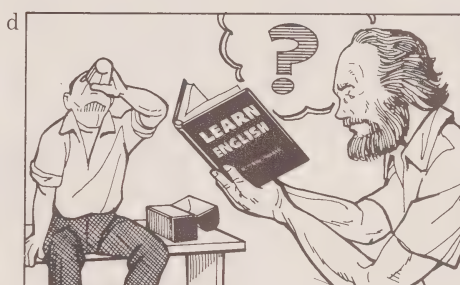
CONVERSATION: Tony Asks Lou for Help



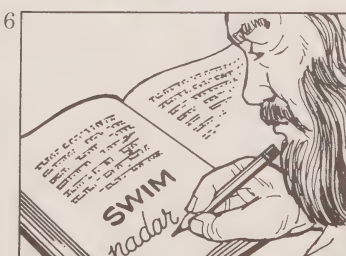
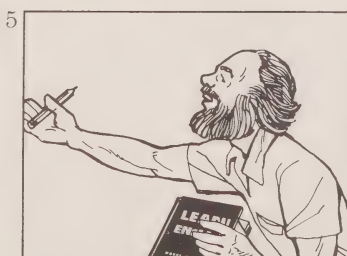
Lou



Tony



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



What does this word mean?



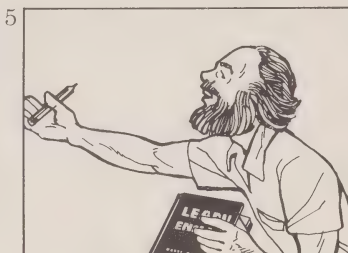
Oh. I understand.



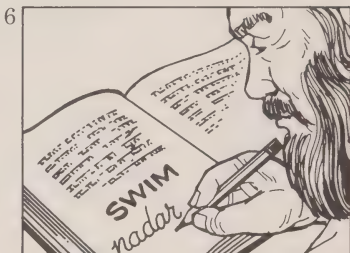
Do you have a pencil?



Yes. Here.



Thanks.



Other Sentences You May Hear

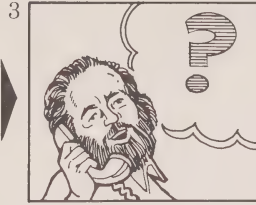
Picture 1: I don't understand this word.

Picture 2: Oh. I see.

Picture 3: Do you have a pencil I could borrow? (MORE FORMAL)
Could you please lend me a pencil? (MORE FORMAL)

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES: Getting Help with English

Make four conversations.



1. What's your address?

2. 42 Main Street West.

3. Pardon?

4. Please repeat that.

5. Please speak louder.

6. Please speak slowly.

7. 42 Main Street West.

8. 42 MAIN STREET WEST.

9. 42 Main Street West.

PRONUNCIATION: Review of Alphabet Letters

1. These letters rhyme: A J K
2. These letters rhyme: B C D E G P T V
3. These letters start with the same sound: F L M N S X
4. These letters rhyme: I Y
5. These letters rhyme: Q U W
6. These letters don't rhyme: H O R Z



Take a partner. One of you says a letter. The other one points to it.



Listen. Circle the letter or letters you hear.
In numbers 13-30, watch your teacher's mouth.

1. a e	7. i e	13. m n	19. f s	25. v b
2. a e	8. i e	14. m n	20. f s	26. v b
3. a e	9. i e	15. m n	21. f s	27. v b
4. ae ea	10. ie ei	16. mn nm	22. fs sf	28. vb bv
5. ae ea	11. ie ei	17. mn nm	23. fs sf	29. vb bv
6. ae ea	12. ie ei	18. mn nm	24. fs sf	30. vb bv

SPEAKING ACTIVITY: Asking for Help with the Alphabet


Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

Each word below has one letter which is difficult to read. Point to that letter and say:

What's this letter?

Print the word.

1. *work*  work
2. *tired* _____
3. *twelve* _____
4. *Chile* _____
5. *Ontario* _____
6. *Toronto* _____
7. *sixteen* _____
8. *forty* _____
9. *Quebec* _____

B. 

Look at your partner's difficult letter. Find that letter here. Your partner doesn't look here. Tell your partner the name of the letter.

1. *work* 
2. *tired* 
3. *twelve* 
4. *Chile* 
5. *Ontario* 
6. *Toronto* 
7. *sixteen* 
8. *forty* 
9. *Quebec* 

Unfold this page. Check to see that you printed the correct letters. Then switch with your partner.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: The Parts of the Body

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

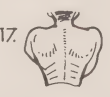
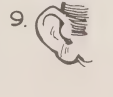
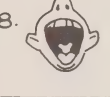
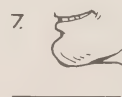
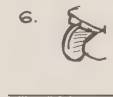
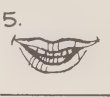
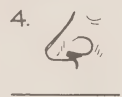
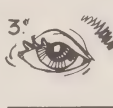
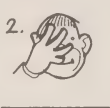
You want to know the names of the parts of the body. Look at each picture here; point to that part of your own body and ask your partner for the name. You can say:

What's this called?

and

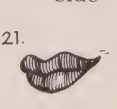
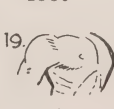
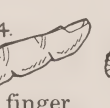
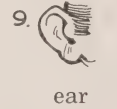
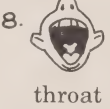
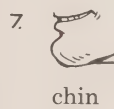
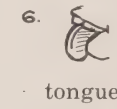
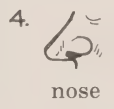
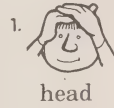
Please spell it.

Write each name under the picture.



B. 

When your partner points to a part of the body, look at the picture here and answer your partner with the name.



Unfold this page. Check your spelling. Then switch with your partner.

Asking for Help with Pronunciation

Some of the words on page 58 are difficult to pronounce, for example:

shoulder, Number 10 mouth, Number 5 chest, Number 19

Ask the teacher to help you with the pronunciation. Give the teacher the picture number of the word that is difficult for you. You can say:

Please pronounce (Number 10). or **How do you say (Number 10)?**

or **How do you pronounce (Number 10)?**

PRONUNCIATION

Here are some words from this unit. Listen to each word and circle the number of the strong syllable.

a. ¹ ² ^③
understand

b. ^① ²
pencil

c. ¹ ²
pardon

d. ¹ ²
repeat

e. ¹ ²
louder

f. ¹ ²
slowly

g. ¹ ²
letter

h. ¹ ²
pronounce

i. ¹ ²
shoulder

j. ¹ ²
finger

k. ¹ ²
stomach

The answers are on page 127.

SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.



Choose a word from below. Say the word to your partner.

head	throat	leg
face	ear	foot
eye	neck	back
nose	shoulder	side
mouth	arm	chest
tongue	hand	stomach
chin	finger	



Respond to A's word with one of these sentences.

1. What does that mean?
2. Pardon?
3. Please speak louder.
4. Please spell that.
5. Please write that.
6. Please repeat that.
7. Please say that again.
8. How do you spell that?
9. I don't understand that word.



Respond to B's sentence.

EXTRA STUDY: Languages of the World




The country that Ana comes from is Chile.
The language that she speaks is Spanish.

Here are some languages.

- | | | | |
|-----------|---------|----------------|------------|
| Afrikaans | Arabic | Chinese | Dutch |
| English | French | German | Greek |
| Hebrew | Hindi | Italian | Korean |
| Lao | Persian | Polish | Portuguese |
| Punjabi | Russian | Serbo-Croatian | Vietnamese |
| Spanish | Tagalog | Urdu | |

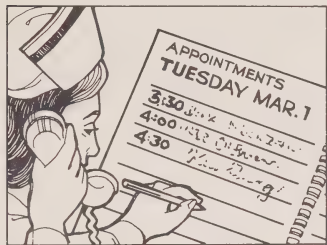
Here are countries from the map on page 7. Write a language that people speak in each country. Choose from the list above.

Country or Place	Language	Country or Place	Language
1. England	 English	16. Poland	
2. United States		17. Lebanon	
3. Vietnam		18. Germany	
4. Jamaica		19. Trinidad-Tobago	
5. India		20. Pakistan	
6. Hong Kong		21. Yugoslavia	
7. Portugal		22. Greece	
8. Philippines		23. Netherlands	
9. Guyana		24. Israel	
10. Italy		25. Soviet Union	
11. Scotland		26. Northern Ireland	
12. South Africa		27. Taiwan	
13. China		28. Iran	
14. Korea		29. Chile	
15. Laos		30. France	

The answers are on page 128.

UNIT 9: TALKING ABOUT CALENDAR TIME

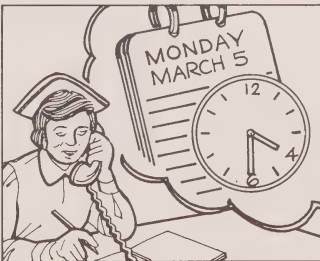
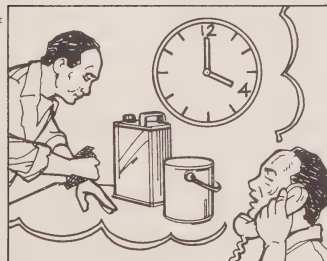
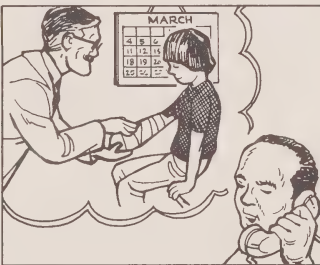
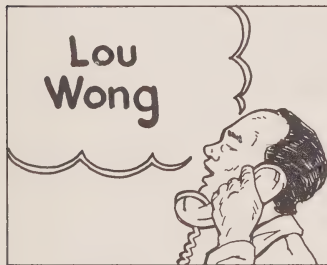
VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



CONVERSATION: A Doctor's Appointment for Ken



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



VOCABULARY: The Calendar

A. Ordinal Numbers


First and **fifth** are ordinal numbers. When we say a calendar date we use an ordinal number.



How about Thursday, March the first at ten a.m.?

Match the ordinal number to the cardinal number.

Cardinal Numbers

- one  first
 two _____
 three _____
 four _____
 five _____
 six _____
 seven _____
 eight _____
 nine _____
 ten _____

Ordinal Numbers

- fifth
 third
 first
 sixth
 second
 fourth
 tenth
 ninth
 eighth
 seventh

B. Days of the Week

Say the long form.

1. Sunday
2. Monday
3. Tuesday
4. Wednesday
5. Thursday
6. Friday
7. Saturday

Match it with the short form.

- Tues.
 Sat.
 Sun.
 Thurs.
 Fri.
 Mon.
 Wed.

Jan.						
Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thurs.	Fri.	Sat.
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31				

C. Months of the Year.

On a cheque, you can write the short form or the long form.
Feb. or February

THE BANK OF BELLEVILLE
109 WATER STREET

PAY TO THE
ORDER OF

Feb. 11 1984

Say the long form.



Look at the calendar.
Copy the short form.

1. January Jan.
2. February _____
3. March _____
4. April _____
5. May _____
6. June _____
7. July _____
8. August _____
9. September _____
10. October _____
11. November _____
12. December _____

JAN.	FEB.	MAR.
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1 2 3
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	4 5 6 7 8 9 10
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	11 12 13 14 15 16 17
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	18 19 20 21 22 23 24
29 30 31	26 27 28 29	25 26 27 28 29 30 31
APRIL	MAY	JUNE
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4 5	1 2
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	6 7 8 9 10 11 12	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	13 14 15 16 17 18 19	10 11 12 13 14 15 16
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	20 21 22 23 24 25 26	17 18 19 20 21 22 23
29 30	27 28 29 30 31	24 25 26 27 28 29 30
JULY	AUG.	SEPT.
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
29 30 31	26 27 28 29 30 31	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
OCT.	NOV.	DEC.
S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S	S M T W T F S
1 2 3 4 5 6	1 2 3	1
7 8 9 10 11 12 13	4 5 6 7 8 9 10	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
14 15 16 17 18 19 20	11 12 13 14 15 16 17	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
21 22 23 24 25 26 27	18 19 20 21 22 23 24	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
28 29 30 31	25 26 27 28 29 30	23 24 25 26 27 28 29

LISTENING ACTIVITY: Calendar Dates

Listen. Circle the date you hear.

JAN.	FEB.	MAR.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1 2 3
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	4 5 6 7 8 9 10
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	11 12 13 14 15 16 17
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	18 19 20 21 22 23 24
29 30 31	26 27 28 29	25 26 27 28 29 30 31
APRIL	MAY	JUNE
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4 5	1 2
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	6 7 8 9 10 11 12	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	13 14 15 16 17 18 19	10 11 12 13 14 15 16
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	20 21 22 23 24 25 26	17 18 19 20 21 22 23
29 30	27 28 29 30 31	24 25 26 27 28 29 30
JULY	AUG.	SEPT.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
29 30 31	26 27 28 29 30 31	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
OCT.	NOV.	DEC.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6	1 2 3	1
7 8 9 10 11 12 13	4 5 6 7 8 9 10	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
14 15 16 17 18 19 20	11 12 13 14 15 16 17	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
21 22 23 24 25 26 27	18 19 20 21 22 23 24	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
28 29 30 31	25 26 27 28 29 30	23 24 25 26 27 28 29

JAN.	FEB.	MAR.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1 2 3
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	4 5 6 7 8 9 10
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	11 12 13 14 15 16 17
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	18 19 20 21 22 23 24
29 30 31	26 27 28 29	25 26 27 28 29 30 31
APRIL	MAY	JUNE
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4 5	1 2
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	6 7 8 9 10 11 12	3 4 5 6 7 8 9
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	13 14 15 16 17 18 19	10 11 12 13 14 15 16
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	20 21 22 23 24 25 26	17 18 19 20 21 22 23
29 30	27 28 29 30 31	24 25 26 27 28 29 30
JULY	AUG.	SEPT.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6 7	1 2 3 4	1
8 9 10 11 12 13 14	5 6 7 8 9 10 11	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
15 16 17 18 19 20 21	12 13 14 15 16 17 18	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
22 23 24 25 26 27 28	19 20 21 22 23 24 25	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
29 30 31	26 27 28 29 30 31	23 24 25 26 27 28 29
OCT.	NOV.	DEC.
SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS	SMTWTFS
1 2 3 4 5 6	1 2 3	1
7 8 9 10 11 12 13	4 5 6 7 8 9 10	2 3 4 5 6 7 8
14 15 16 17 18 19 20	11 12 13 14 15 16 17	9 10 11 12 13 14 15
21 22 23 24 25 26 27	18 19 20 21 22 23 24	16 17 18 19 20 21 22
28 29 30 31	25 26 27 28 29 30	23 24 25 26 27 28 29




SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people these questions:

- A. What’s your name? (Please spell it.)
- B. When’s your birthday?
- C. When did you come to Canada?

Write the answers here:

A. NAME

B. BIRTHDAY

C. DATE OF ARRIVAL IN CANADA

(Month)

(Day)

(Month)

(Day)

(Year)

Tony

June 6

Feb 7 1984

Continue in your notebook.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Calling for an Appointment

Caller:
Call and ask for an appointment.

Receptionist:
1. Give an appointment time.
2. Ask for the caller's name and telephone number.
3. Write the name and phone number in the appointment book.

THURSDAY, MARCH 1.			FRIDAY, MARCH 2.		
TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.	TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.
10:00			10:00		
10:30			10:30		
11:00			11:00		
11:30			11:30		
12:00			12:00		
12:30			12:30		
1:00			1:00		
1:30			1:30		
2:00			2:00		
2:30			2:30		
3:00			3:00		
3:30			3:30		
4:00			4:00		
4:30			4:30		

MONDAY, APRIL 2.			TUESDAY, APRIL 3.		
TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.	TIME	NAME	PHONE NO.
10:00			10:00		
10:30			10:30		
11:00			11:00		
11:30			11:30		
12:00			12:00		
12:30			12:30		
1:00			1:00		
1:30			1:30		
2:00			2:00		
2:30			2:30		
3:00			3:00		
3:30			3:30		
4:00			4:00		
4:30			4:30		

GRAMMAR: Verbs with s Added



I work until 4.

This is a statement with I.

I work until four.



This is a statement with He.

You add s to the verb work.

He works until four.

3 This is a statement with She.

She works until four.

4 This is a statement with Tony.

Tony works on King Street.

5 Make statements.



He works until five.



She lives on King Street.



She works until four-thirty.



The answers are on page 128.

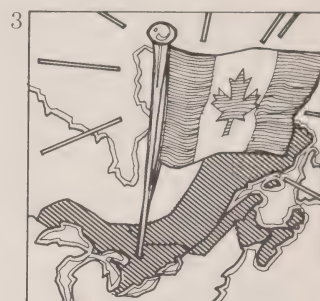
USEFUL INFORMATION: Holidays and Other Special Days



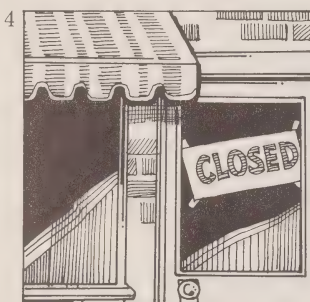
Canada Day is on July 1.



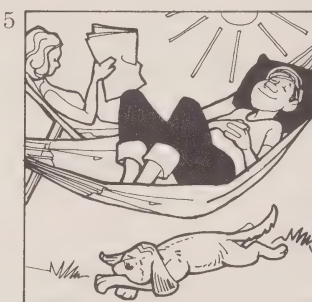
On July 1, in 1867, four separate provinces united.



Canada became a country.



Businesses are closed on July 1.



This is a national holiday.



In the evening there are fireworks in some of the public parks.

7. These are the national holidays:

New Year's Day, January 1
Good Friday, in March or April
Queen Victoria Day, May 24 or the Monday before
Canada Day, July 1
Labour Day, the first Monday in September
Thanksgiving Day, the second Monday in October
Christmas, December 25

8. This is a provincial holiday in Ontario. Not all businesses are closed:

Lord Simcoe Day, the first Monday in August

9. These are other special days in Canada:

Valentine's Day, February 14
Easter Monday, in March or April
Mother's Day, the second Sunday in May
Father's Day, the third Sunday in June
Hallowe'en, October 31
Remembrance Day, November 11
Boxing Day, December 26

EXTRA STUDY: More About Holidays and Other Special Days

Read silently. Look in the dictionary if necessary.

New Year's Day — January 1

This is a national holiday. The evening of December 31 is called "New Year's Eve." On New Year's Eve there are parties and other celebrations. Exactly at midnight everyone kisses and says "Happy New Year."



a party



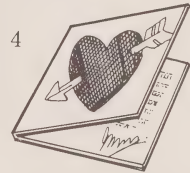
a kiss

Valentine's Day — February 14

The name comes from Saint Valentine. He lived hundreds of years ago. This day is special for people in love. They send greeting cards called "Valentines" or they give gifts. Children often give Valentine cards.



giving a gift



a valentine

Victoria Day — May 24, or the Monday before

This is the birthday of Queen Victoria; she was the Queen of England for more than 60 years. In the evening there are fireworks in some of the public parks.



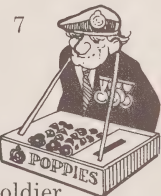
Queen Victoria

Remembrance Day — November 11

We remember the Canadian soldiers who died in World War I and II. Red poppy flowers grew on the graves of soldiers in Belgium. We buy red poppies and the money goes to veteran soldiers.



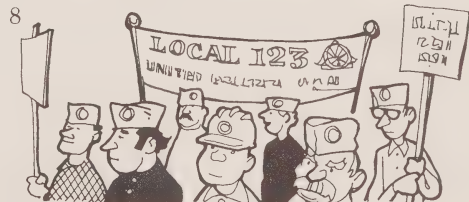
soldiers



a veteran soldier

Labour Day — The first Monday in September

This day honours all workers. There is often a parade on the main street of a city. Labour Day is the last day of summer holidays for children before they return to school.



a parade

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

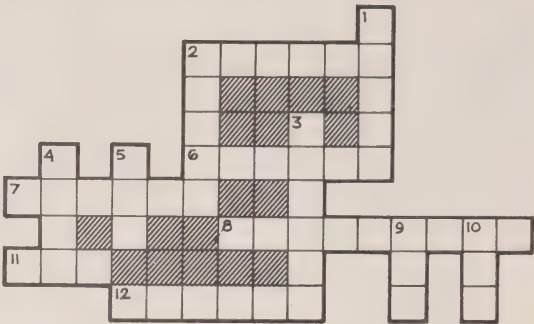
Down

- 1. After the second.
- 2. Before the second.
- 3. The day after Sunday.
- 4. Sixth month of the year.
- 5. Short form of "Sunday."
- 9. Short form of "Saturday."
- 10. Short form of "August."

Across

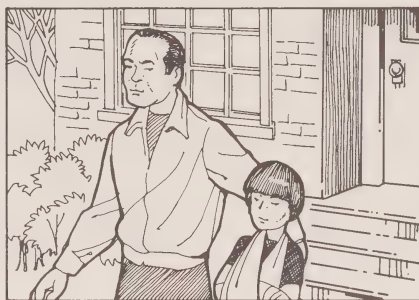
- 2. After the third.
- 6. After the first.
- 7. Eighth month of the year.
- 8. The day after Tuesday.
- 11. Short form of "February."
- 12. The day before Saturday.

The answers are on page 128.



UNIT 10: FINDING YOUR WAY AROUND

CONVERSATION: Lou and Ken Take the Bus



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION



Do you go to Queen Street?



Yes.



Please call out Queen Street.



Sure.



Queen Street next.



Thank you.



You're welcome.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: Does this bus go to Queen Street?

Picture 3: Would you please call out Queen Street?

Picture 4: Okay. I will.

Picture 5: Next stop Queen Street.

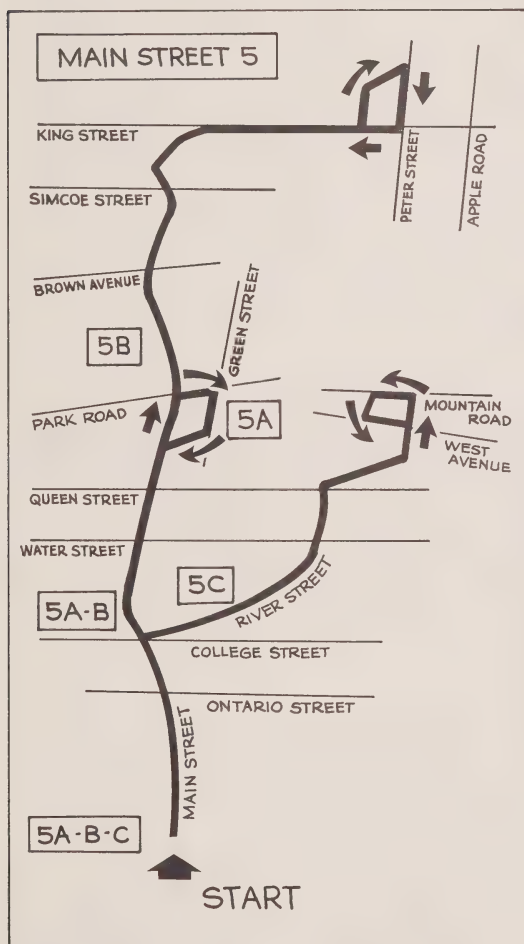
READING: Bus Routes

There are three buses on Main Street: 5A, 5B and 5C.



These three buses start out together on Main Street; then they go three different routes.

Here are the three bus routes.



Answer these questions.

- Does the Number 5A bus go to Queen St.?
Yes
- Which bus goes to Brown Ave.?
5B
- Does the Number 5C bus go to King St.?

- Does the Number 5B go to Simcoe St.?

- Which bus goes to West Ave.?

- Which bus goes to Green St.?

- Does the Number 5B go to Mountain Rd.?

- Does the Number 5A go to Park Rd.?

- Which bus goes to Peter St.?

- Which bus goes to Mountain Rd.?

- Does the 5A bus go to King St.?

The answers are on page 128.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Asking for the Right Bus

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.

A 

You want to get to each street below. Ask your partner for the right bus. You can say:
How do I get to (Queen Street)?
or
What bus do I take to (Queen Street)?



Write down the number of the bus.

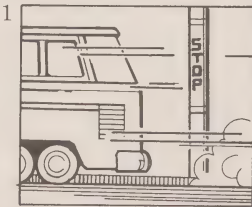
Queen Street	<u>5A-B</u>	Simcoe Street	_____	West Avenue	_____
Water Street	_____	Park Road	_____	Mountain Road	_____
Peter Street	_____	Green Street	_____	Apple Road	_____
King Street	_____	Brown Avenue	_____	College Street	_____

Look at the bus route on page 73 and check your numbers.

B 

Look at the bus route on page 73. Answer your partner. You can say:
Take the (5A) bus.

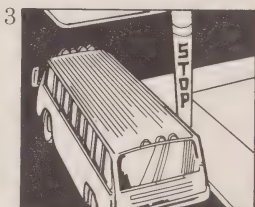
USEFUL INFORMATION: You Want to Get Off the Bus



1 Buses do not stop at every bus stop.



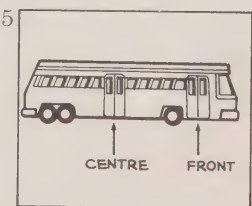
2 If you want to get off, pull the cord before you come to the bus stop.



3 Then the bus will stop for you.



4 Sometimes the driver says "Centre doors, please."



5 That means you exit by the centre doors, not the front doors.



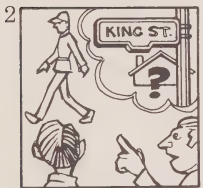
6 You step down to open the doors.

GRAMMAR I: Questions with Does



This is a Yes or No question with **You**.

Do you live on King Street ?



This is a Yes or No question with **He**.

Does he live on King Street ?

This is the answer: Yes or Yes he does; or No or No he doesn't.

3. This is a question with **Ana**.

Does Ana live on King Street ?

4. This is a question with **The 5A bus**.

Does the 5A bus go to King Street ?

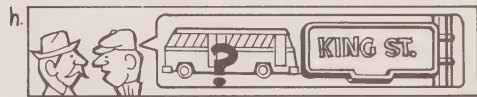
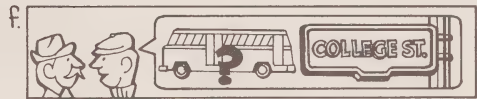
5. Make questions.



Does she work on King Street ?



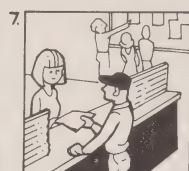
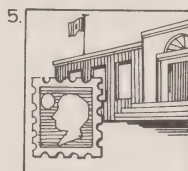
Does the bus go to Main Street ?



The answers are on page 128.

VOCABULARY: For Listening Activity

PART I: Places

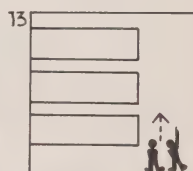
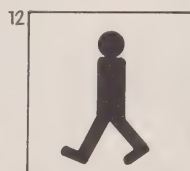
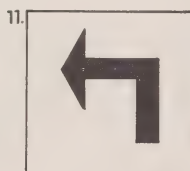
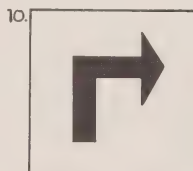


1. school
2. library
3. park
4. hospital
5. post office

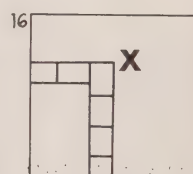
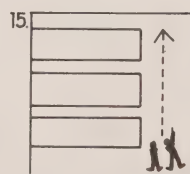
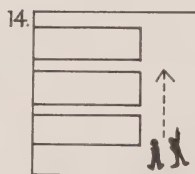
6. coffee shop
7. Canada Employment Centre
8. train station
9. bus station



PART II: Directions

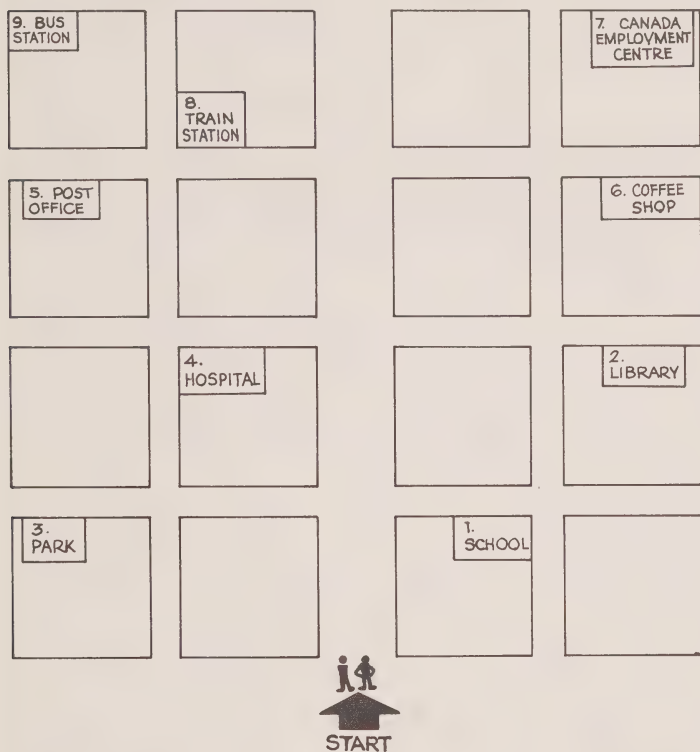


10. Turn right.
11. Turn left.
12. Walk.
13. Walk one block.
14. Walk two blocks.
15. Walk three blocks.
16. It's at the corner.



LISTENING ACTIVITY: Find the Place

- Before doing this activity look over the Vocabulary on page 76.
- Put your finger at **START**.
- Listen to the teacher's directions and follow with your finger. Where are you?



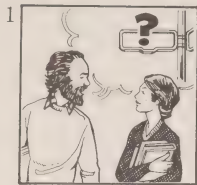
Take a partner.

You are the teacher. Give directions. Choose from these.

Turn right.
Turn left.

Walk one block.
Walk two blocks.
It's at the corner.

GRAMMAR II: Questions with Where



This is a question with **Where** and **You**.

Where do you live?



This is a question with **Where** and **She**.

Where does she live?

This is the answer: on King Street

3. This is a question with **Where** and **He**.

Where does he live?

4. This is a question with **Where** and **Ana**.

Where does Ana live?

5. Make questions with **Where**.

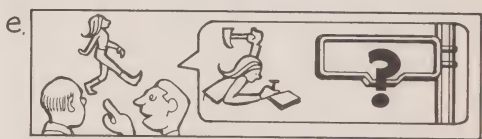


Where does he live?

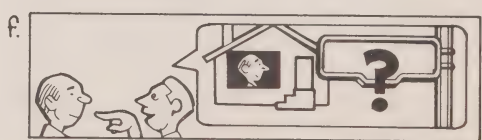




Where do you work?







The answers are on page 128.

READING: Bus Signs

Read the signs below. The pictures will help you understand the words.

a



1.  **WATCH**


2.  **YOUR STEP**

b



3.  **MOVE DOWN THE BUS**

c



4.  **KEEP ARM IN**

5.  **KEEP HEAD IN**

d



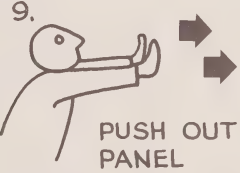
6.  **LIFT**

7.  **PUSH**

e



8.  **PULL DOWN LEVER**

9.  **PUSH OUT PANEL**

f



10.  **BREAK COVER**

11.  **TURN HANDLE**

Cover up the pictures. Look at each sign. Do you understand it?

PRONUNCIATION

These two questions sound almost the same.

Does he live on King Street? Does she live on King Street?

Listen. Circle what you hear, or

- 1. [Male icon] [Female icon]
- 2. [Male icon] [Female icon]
- 3. [Male icon] [Female icon]
- 4. [Male icon] [Female icon]
- 5. [Male icon] [Female icon]
- 6. [Male icon] [Female icon]
- 7. [Male icon] [Female icon]
- 8. [Male icon] [Female icon]

Here are questions and answers about Tony and Ana.

Where does he live? On Simcoe Street.
Where does she live? On King Street.

The two questions sound almost the same. Listen to the question and give the correct answer.

Here are the names of streets you can find in some Ontario cities.
Listen to each name and circle the number of the strong syllable.

- a. Huron St. (1. 2.)
- b. Ontario Ave. (1. 2. 3. 4.)
- c. McKenzie St. (1. 2. 3.)
- d. Simcoe St. (1. 2.)
- e. Niagara Ave. (1. 2. 3. 4.)
- f. Avenue Rd. (1. 2. 3.)
- g. Victoria Ave. (1. 2. 3. 4.)
- h. Elizabeth St. (1. 2. 3. 4.)
- i. River St. (1. 2.)
- j. MacDonald St. (1. 2. 3.)
- k. College St. (1. 2.)

The answers are on page 128.

Write the name of the street you live on.

Write the name of the street your school is on.

Write the name of two or three streets you use when you come to school.

In each street name, show the strongest syllable. Ask your teacher to help you.

EXTRA STUDY: Two-line Dialogues

Complete each dialogue.

1. Why are you tired?

☒ I was at the hospital until four last night.

2. Where does Ana live?

☐ _____

3. What time is it?

☐ _____

4. I'd like an appointment.

☐ _____

5. Why are you tired?

☐ _____

6. How's your sister?

☐ _____

Choose from these sentences.

- A. On King Street.
- B. How about October 19, at two o'clock?
- C. I was at the hospital until four last night.
- D. She's fine.
- E. I don't know. I don't have my watch.
- F. I was at work until twelve last night.

The answers are on page 128.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

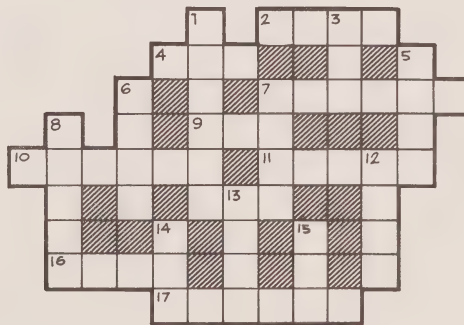
Look in the dictionary if necessary.

Down:

- 1. Between the front and back.
- 3. Automobile.
- 5. Opposite of "right."
- 6. The number after four.
- 7. You pull this when you want to get off the bus.
- 8. Opposite of "back."
- 12. Please ____ me.
- 13. The number before ten.
- 14. The number before two.
- 15. Short form of "Avenue."

Across:

- 2. Opposite of "front."
- 4. The number after nine.
- 7. Where two streets meet.
- 9. The number before three.
- 10. The person who drives the bus is the bus ____.
- 11. Opposite of "left."
- 16. A small city.
- 17. The number after ten.



The answers are on page 128.

UNIT 11: GETTING DIRECTIONS INSIDE

CONVERSION: Ken Asks For Directions



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



Words for the Conversation on page 84.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES

Make as many conversations as you can.

1

Where's the washroom?

2

Turn right.
It's the second door.

3

I'm sorry.
I don't know.

4

Thank you.

5

Pardon?

6

Thanks anyway.

7

You're welcome.


8

Turn right.
It's the second door.


READING: Signs in a Building

Here are some signs that you might see in a building.


d.




e.




f.



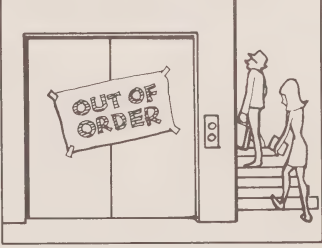
a.



b.

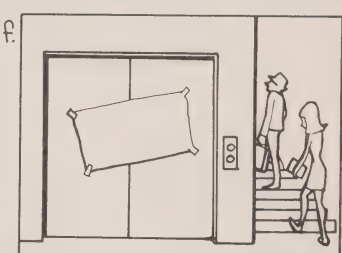
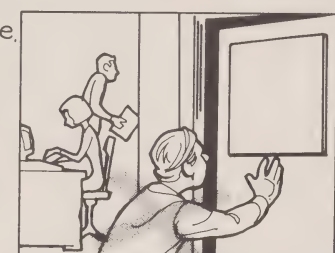
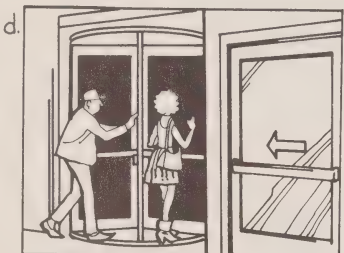


c.



83

Here are the pictures without the signs. Can you remember the signs?



Match the picture to the sign and put the letter in the box.

1. ☒ d Please use revolving doors.

2. ☐ Fire door. Keep closed.

3. ☐ Caution. Wet floors.

4. ☐ Employees only.

5. ☐ Out of Order.

6. ☐ Wet Paint.

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

1. Excuse me.

2. Yes?

3. Where's the washroom?

4. Turn right.

5. It's the second door.

6. Thanks.

7. Excuse me.

8. It's the other way.

9. Thank you.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: Pardon me.

Picture 3: Could you please tell me where the washroom is?
(MORE FORMAL)

Picture 4: It's to the right.

Picture 7: Just a minute. (INFORMAL)
Wait. (INFORMAL)

VOCABULARY: For the Listening Activity

Part I: Places and Objects Inside A Building

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

1. office

2. exit

3. elevator

4. telephone

5. coffee shop

6. water fountain

7. fire alarm

8. library

PART II: Directions

9.

10.

11.

12.

13.

14.

15.

16.

9. Turn right.

10. Turn left.

11. The first door.

12. The second door.

13. Go straight ahead.

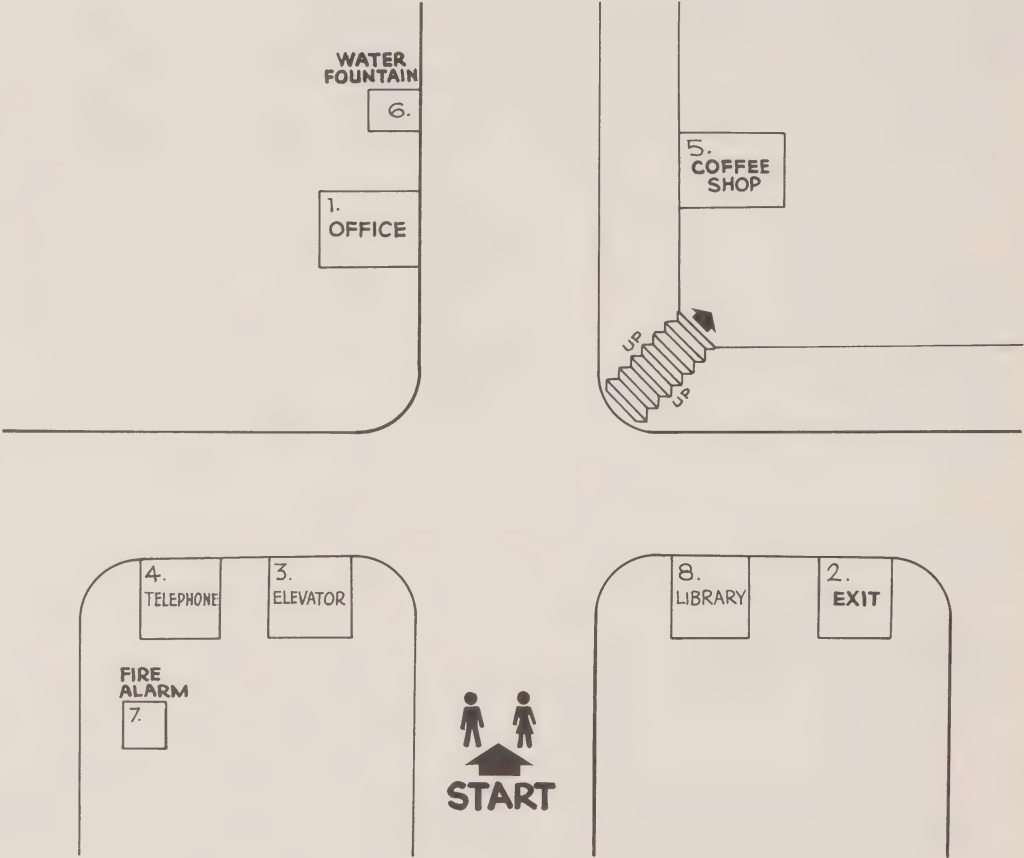
14. Next to the office.

15. One floor up.

16. One floor down.

LISTENING ACTIVITY: Find the Place

- a. Before doing this activity look over the Vocabulary on page 85.
- b. Put your finger at **START**.
- c. Listen to the teacher's directions and follow with your finger. Where are you?



Take a partner.
You are the teacher. Give directions. Choose from these:

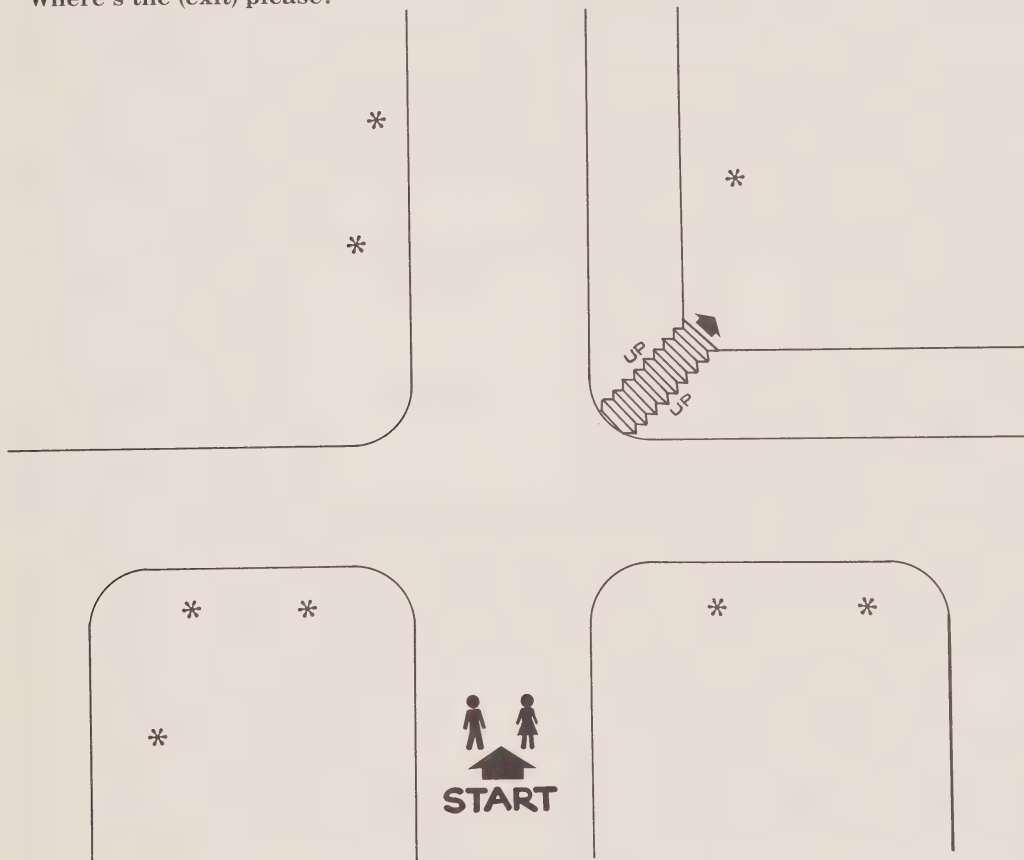
- Turn right.
- Turn left.
- Turn left again.
- Go straight ahead.

It's

- the first door.
- the second door.
- next to the office.
- one floor up.

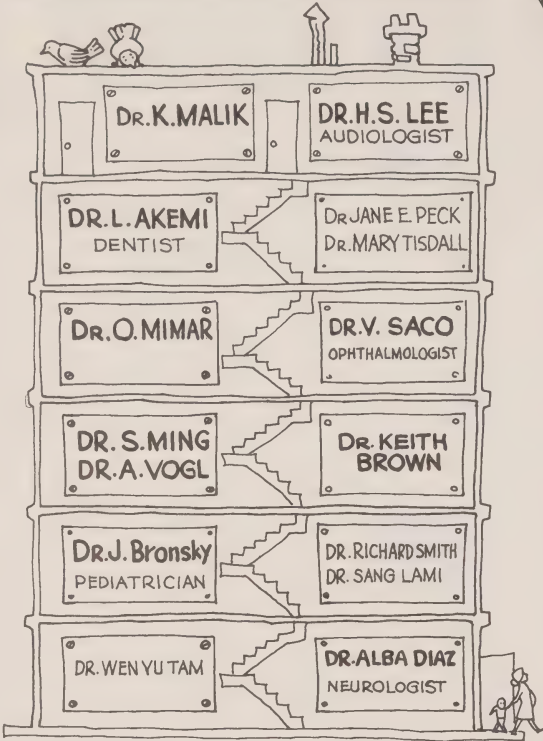
COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Directions

- Tear out each picture card at the bottom of the page.
- Take a partner.
- Put one picture card on each star. Your partner doesn't look.
- Your partner takes one of his/her picture cards and says:
Where's the (exit) please?
- You look at your floor plan and give directions. Your partner puts his/her card in the right place on his/her floor plan.
- When all the picture cards are placed, check to make sure both floor plans look the same.



VOCABULARY: The Floors of a Building

Here are some doctors' offices in a building.



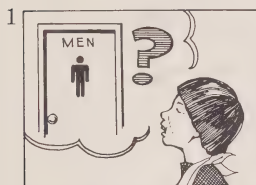
On what floor is each doctor?
Write the answers.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a. Doctor Akemi
the fifth floor | g. Doctor Peck
_____ |
| b. Doctor Tam
the first floor | h. Doctor Ming
_____ |
| c. Doctor Saco
_____ | i. Doctor Lee
_____ |
| d. Doctor Mimar
_____ | j. Doctor Malik
_____ |
| e. Doctor Diaz
_____ | k. Doctor Smith
_____ |
| f. Doctor Bronsky
_____ | l. Doctor Lami
_____ |

The answers are on page 129.

library fire alarm water fountain coffee shop telephone elevator exit office

GRAMMAR: Question-word Questions with Is



Long form:

Where is the washroom?

Short form:

Where's the washroom?

Where's the washroom?

2. The short form: what happens.

Where is**Where's****Where's****= Where's**

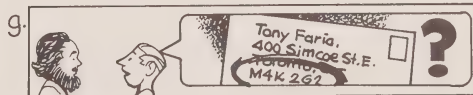
3. The short form with What and How.

What's your name?**How's your little boy?**

4. Make questions with Where.

**Where's the washroom?**

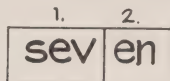
Make questions with What.

**What's your name?**

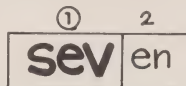
The answers are on page 129.

PRONUNCIATION: The Sound (ə)

A. Look at this word. It has two syllables.



B. The first syllable is strong.
We stress it; we say it louder.
It is called the stressed syllable.



C. Here is the stressed syllable.

sev

Here is the unstressed syllable.

en

D. The vowel e in the unstressed syllable is pronounced (ə).
This weak and short sound (ə) is called the Schwa.

E. Here are more two-syllable words in which the first syllable is stressed. The second syllable in each word is unstressed and has the sound (ə).

- 1 **quarter**
- 2 **pencil**
- 3 **dollar**
- 4 **langu²age**
- 5 **doct²or**
- 6 **second**

The letter e is pronounced (ə).

The letter i is pronounced (ə).

The letter a is pronounced (ə).

The letter ²a is pronounced (ə).

The letter ²o is pronounced (ə).

The letter o is pronounced (ə).

F. Here is a two-syllable word in which the second syllable is stressed. The first syllable is unstressed and has the sound (ə).

- 7 **police**

The letter o is pronounced (ə).

G. In most two-syllable nouns in English, the first syllable has the strongest stress.

H. Each word below has the sound (ə). Listen. Which letter is pronounced (ə)? Write the letter.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. exit <u> i </u> | 4. nickel <u> </u> | 7. al ¹ arm <u> </u> | 9. welcome <u> </u> |
| 2. office <u> </u> | 5. sen ¹ tence <u> </u> | 8. hundred <u> </u> | 10. about <u> </u> |
| 3. July <u> </u> | 6. answer <u> </u> | | |

I. In each word below there is no Schwa (ə). The first syllable has the strongest stress, but both syllables are stressed. There is no unstressed syllable.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 11. coffee | 13. Monday | 15. country | 17. slowly |
| 12. fourteen | 14. forty | 16. morning | |

PRONUNCIATION: Noun Compounds

The words below are called noun compounds. A noun compound is made up of two words. Listen to each compound and circle the number of the strongest syllable.

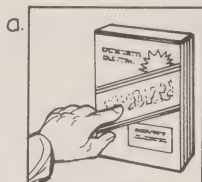
- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| a. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">①23</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">coffee shop</div> | b. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">1②345</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">apartment number</div> | |
| c. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">123</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">bus station</div> | d. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">123</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">train station</div> | e. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">123</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">fire alarm</div> |
| f. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">1234</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">fire department</div> | g. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">12345</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">department number</div> | h. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">123</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">post office</div> |
| i. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">1234</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">water fountain</div> | j. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">123</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">postal code</div> | k. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-bottom: 5px;">12345</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">telephone number</div> |

Does the strongest syllable come in the first word or the second word of a noun compound?

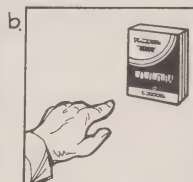
The answers are on page 129.

UNIT 12: SHOPPING FOR GROCERIES

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



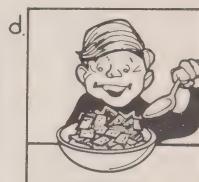
this box



that box



(to) not like

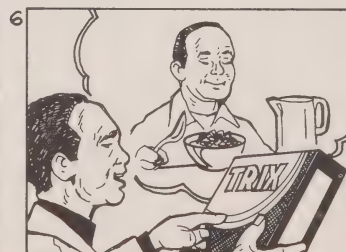


(to) like

CONVERSATION: Lou and Su Ping Go Shopping



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



Words for the Conversation on page 99.

COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: The Price of Groceries

Beside a write what you pay for each item, or how much you think it costs.



bread

- a. _____ a loaf
b. _____ a loaf



milk

- a. _____ a litre
b. _____ a litre

butter



- a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram

coffee



- a. _____ for 57 grams
b. _____ for 57 grams



teabags

- a. _____ for 12
b. _____ for 12



hand soap

- a. _____ a bar
b. _____ a bar

sugar



- a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram

toothpaste



- a. _____ for 50 ml.
b. _____ for 50 ml.



onions

- a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram



potatoes

- a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram



beef

- a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram

chicken



- a. _____ a kilogram
b. _____ a kilogram

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.

A.

Ask what B pays for each item above and write it beside b.

You can say:

How much do you pay for (bread)?

or

What do you pay for (bread)?

B.

Answer A. You can say any of these sentences:

\$ _____.

I think \$ _____.

I don't remember.

I don't buy that.

I haven't bought that for a long time.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Grocery Products Without Brand Names

Some grocery products are cheaper because they have no brand names and less money is spent on advertising. These products have no pictures on the containers.



Brand name



No brand name

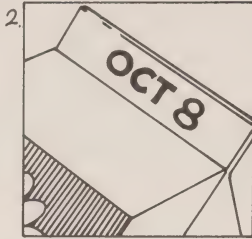
Do you buy products without brand names?
Which products?

READING: Expiry and Packaging Dates

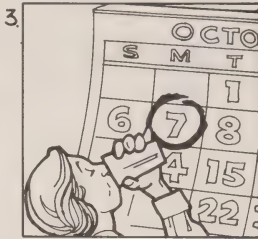
PART I: Expiry Dates



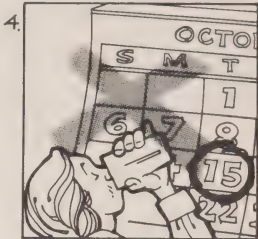
Here is a container of milk.



This is the expiry date. The milk is good until Oct. 8.



On Oct. 7 the milk is still good for use. You can drink it.

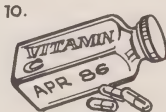


After Oct. 8, the milk may not be good.

Today is Aug. 28, 1984. The items below are in your kitchen. Are they still good?



Yes



Part II: Packaging Dates



This man is packaging meat.



The packaging date is October twenty-first.

Read these packaging dates. Write out each one in your notebook.



SPEAKING ACTIVITY: Directions in the Supermarket

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.

A. 

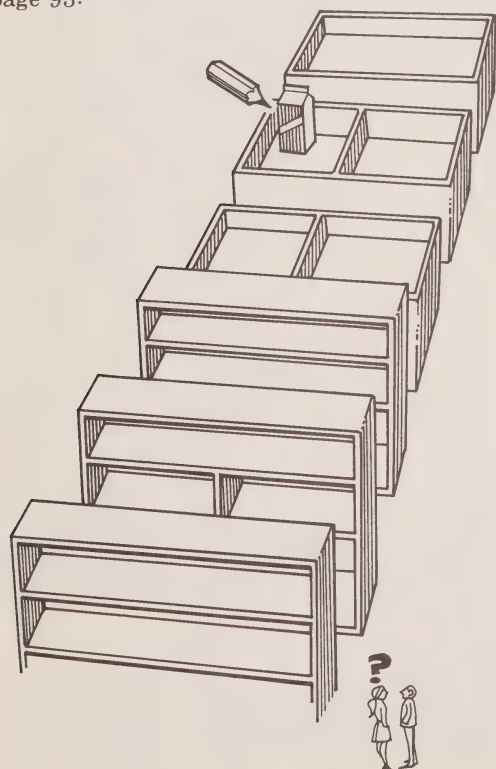
Here are some groceries you are looking for.

bread	coffee
teabags	butter
milk	toothpaste
hand soap	chicken

Ask your partner for directions. You can say:
Where can I find (the bread)?

When you get directions draw in the grocery product.

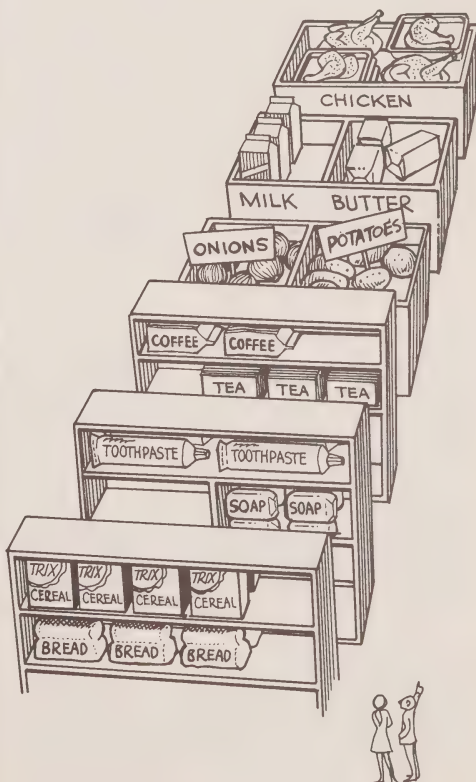
If you don't know how to draw it, look on page 93.



B. 

Give your partner directions. You can say:

- On the bottom shelf.
- On the top shelf.
- In the next aisle.
- In the second aisle.
- In the third aisle.
- In the fourth aisle.
- In the last aisle.



Unfold this page. Check to see that your products are in the correct place.
Then switch with your partner.

GRAMMAR: Negative Sentences with Doesn't



This is an
AFFIRMATIVE statement.

Lou likes TRIX cereal.



This is a
NEGATIVE statement.

Lou doesn't like MUNCHIES cereal.

3. The short form:
what happens. does not does n't doesn't doesn't = doesn't

4. Negative statement with He. He doesn't like MUNCHIES cereal.

5. Negative statement with She. She doesn't like TRIX cereal.

6. Make affirmative and negative statements with like.



He likes chicken.





He doesn't like beef.











The answers are on page 129.

7. Here are
two new
pronouns.

we



they



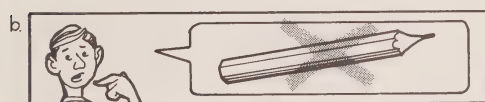
8. Here are more negative statements.

I You We They	don't	live on Main St. work on Sunday. have a watch.
He She Lou Ana My friend	doesn't	like chicken. know the time.

9. Make negative statements with the verb
have.



She doesn't have change.



Make negative statements with
the verbs **work** and **live**.



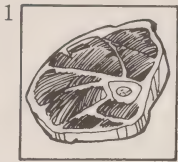
I don't work on Saturday.



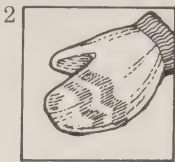
The answers are on page 129.

PRONUNCIATION: The Sounds (ē) and (i).

Meat has the sound (ē). Mitt has the sound (i). The sounds (ē) and (i) can be confused.



meat



mitt

To make the sound (ē), press the tongue against the upper side teeth and spread the lips.

To make the sound (i), relax the mouth. This is a short vowel.



Here are more words with the sound (ē), from Units 1 to 12.

Here are more words with the sound (i), from Units 1 to 12.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 5. he | 9. she |
| 6. coffee | 10. thir <u>teen</u> |
| 7. <u>seat</u> | 11. <u>please</u> |
| 8. sorry | 12. twen <u>ty</u> |

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 13. <u>live</u> | 18. <u>little</u> |
| 14. <u>big</u> | 19. <u>chicken</u> |
| 15. <u>milk</u> | 20. <u>six</u> |
| 16. <u>it's</u> | 21. <u>chin</u> |
| 17. <u>until</u> | |

Here are two sentences with (ē) and (i).

- a. Do you have the meat? b. Do you have the mitt?



Listen. Which sentence do you hear, a or b? Write a or b.

22. _____ 23. _____ 24. _____ 25. _____ 26. _____ 27. _____ 28. _____ 29. _____

Here are some other sounds that can be confused.

- (e) as in ten and (ā) as in name
(a) as in hat and (o) as in clock
(u) as in look and (ü) as in too

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. How much is that? | 5. This is a dollar-fifty |
| 2. A dollar-fifty. | for five hundred grams. |
| 3. How many grams is it? | 6. But I like this. |
| 4. Four hundred. | 7. Okay. |

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: How much does that cost?

What's the price of that?

Picture 3: How many grams does it weigh?

Picture 7: Okay. We'll take this one.

Okay. Let's get this one.

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

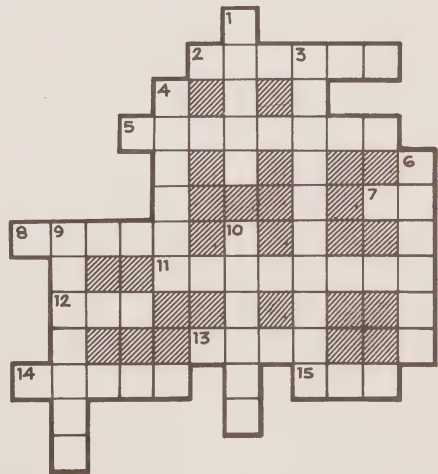
Look in the dictionary, if necessary.

Down:

- Some people put this in their tea or coffee to make it sweet.
- We use this to brush our teeth. It comes in a tube.
- Some people drink this in the morning.
- After the third and before the fifth.
- $2 \times 50 = \text{one } \underline{\hspace{1cm}}$
- After the first and before the third.

Across:

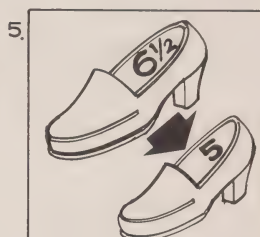
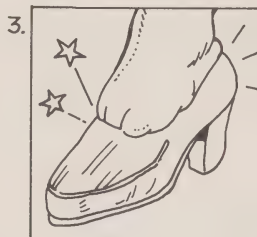
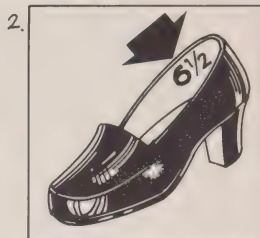
- We spread this on our bread or toast. It's made from milk.
- These vegetables have brown skin and grow in the ground. We cook them.
- Opposite of "Yes."
- The number after two.
- This carries you up and down from floor to floor inside a building.
- This word makes the sentence negative.
- This part of your body is at the bottom of your leg.
- Su Ping asked Lou how many $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ the box weighed.
- Everybody needs to $\underline{\hspace{1cm}}$ in order to live.



The answers are on page 129.

UNIT 13: SHOPPING FOR CLOTHES

VOCABULARY: For the Conversation



Nouns

1. shoes
2. the size

Adjectives

3. small
4. big
5. a smaller size

Verbs

6. (to) touch

CONVERSATION: Su Ping Goes Shopping for Shoes



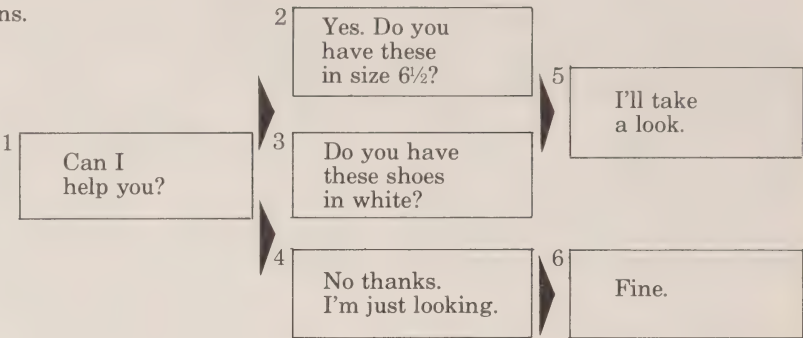
First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.



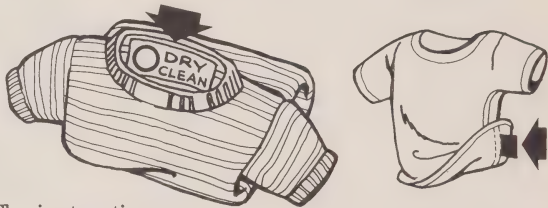
Words for the Conversation on page 104.

EXTENSION WITH CHOICES

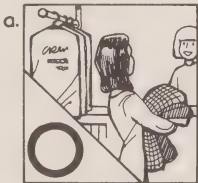
Make three conversations.



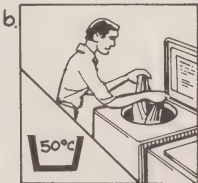
READING: Instructions for Care of Clothing



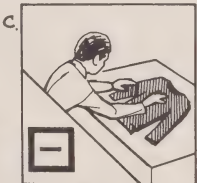
Clothing labels sometimes have instructions. The instructions tell you how to wash or clean the clothing. Here are some instructions and some pictures to show the meaning.



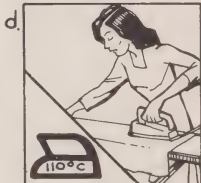
Dry clean.



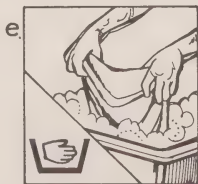
Machine wash.



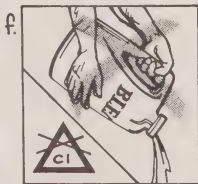
Lay flat to dry.



Low iron.



Hand wash.



Do not bleach.



Line dry or Hang to dry.



Use mild soap.

Here are the same pictures. Can you remember the instructions?

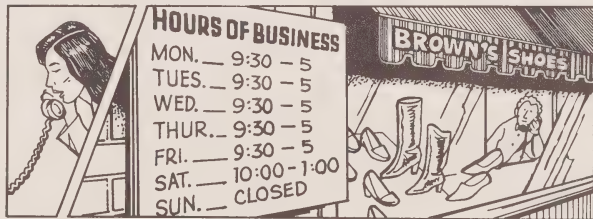


Match the picture to the instruction and put the letter in the box.

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| 1 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Hand wash. | 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Line dry <u>or</u> Hang to dry. | 7 <input type="checkbox"/> Do not bleach. |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Machine wash. | 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Lay flat to dry. | 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Use mild soap only. |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Dry clean. | 6 <input type="checkbox"/> Low iron. | |

READING: Hours of Business

Before Su Ping went shopping, she called the store to find out the hours of business.



You are the storekeeper. Answer these questions.



- What time do you open on Monday? Nine-thirty
- What time do you close on Wednesday? Five o'clock
- What time do you open on Saturday? _____
- What time do you open on Tuesday? _____
- What time do you close on Friday? _____
- What time do you open on Thursday? _____



COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Hours of Business

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B. Fold this page in half.


A. 

You are a shopper. Telephone the store to find out the missing hours of business and write them in. You can say:

What time do you open (on Monday)?
and

What time do you close (on Tuesday)?

Monday	<input type="text"/> - 6 p.m.
Tuesday	9 a.m. - <input type="text"/>
Wednesday	9 a.m. - <input type="text"/>
Thursday	<input type="text"/> - 9 p.m.
Friday	9 a.m. - 8 p.m.
Saturday	10 a.m. - <input type="text"/>
Sunday	

B. 

You are the salesman. Look here at the hours of business and answer your partner's questions.

Monday	9 a.m. - 6 p.m.
Tuesday	9 a.m. - 6 p.m.
Wednesday	9 a.m. - 6 p.m.
Thursday	9 a.m. - 9 p.m.
Friday	9 a.m. - 8 p.m.
Saturday	10 a.m. - 2 p.m.
Sunday	Closed

Unfold this page. Check to see that you wrote the correct times. Then switch with your partner.

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

1. Can I help you?	3. I'll take a look.	7. Sorry. I don't have
2. Yes. Do you have these	4. Have a seat.	a smaller size.
in size 6½?	5. Here you are.	8. Okay. Thank you.
	6. They're too big.	9. Ken. Don't touch the shoes.

Other Sentences You May Hear

- Picture 1: May I help you?
Do you need some help?
- Picture 2: Yes. I'd like to try these in size 6½.
- Picture 3: I'll see if we have a size 6½.
- Picture 6: They're too loose.
They don't fit.
- Picture 7: Sorry. I don't have anything smaller.
Sorry. There's nothing smaller.
Sorry. 6½ is the smallest we have.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Returning an Item



When you buy an item, keep the sales receipt.



If you don't like the item,



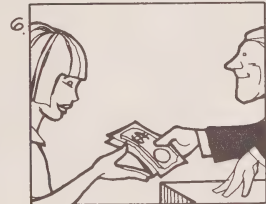
and you want to return it to the store,



you need the receipt.



In some stores, they will take back the item



and give you a cash refund.



Some stores will not give you a cash refund.



Some stores will exchange the item for something different.



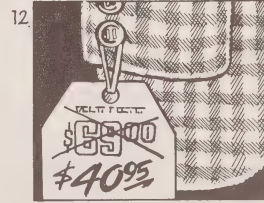
Some stores will give you a credit note, to buy something else.



The credit note is good for a certain time.



When you buy an item, read the sales receipt. It tells about refunds and exchanges.



Usually, if the item is on sale, no refund or exchange is possible.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Winter Clothing



It's important to dress warmly in winter. Otherwise parts of your body can freeze.



A scarf helps. In extreme cold, you might need a balaclava.



Body heat goes out through your head. Wear a hat or hood and cover your ears.



Wear clothes that keep body heat in. Wool and down are good materials.



Layers of clothing also help keep in body heat,



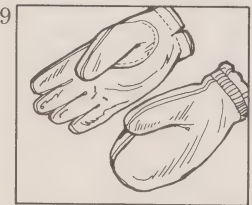
for example: long underwear, tights, and sweaters.



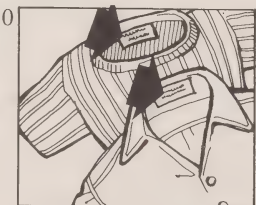
Wear boots with a warm lining and/or one or two pairs of socks.



Buy boots that have traction on the bottom so you don't slip on the ice.



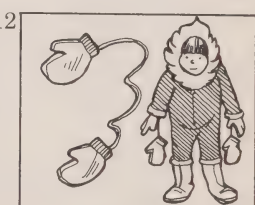
Wear gloves or mitts. Mitts are usually warmer than gloves.



Look at the labels. Natural materials like cotton and wool are warmer than synthetics.



Remember that the cold will affect your body more if there is a wind.



For your child you can get a snowsuit. You can attach mitts on a string so they won't get lost.

GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION: Plural Nouns



Don't touch
the shoes.

Singular (one):



Plural (two or more):



shoes



shoes

2. How to write the plural:

a. We usually add **s** to the singular noun.

shoe

clock



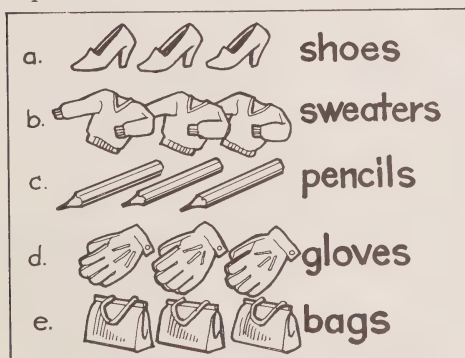
b. If the singular noun ends in **s**, **z**, **ch** or **sh**, we add **es**.

watch

address



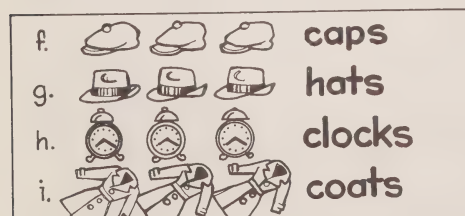
3. The plural ending **s** is sometimes pronounced (**z**), for example:



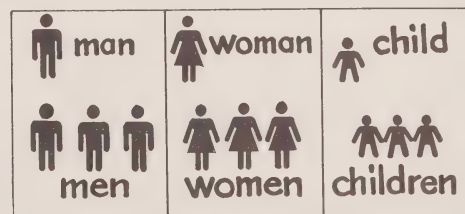
4. The plural ending **es** is pronounced (**iz**), for example:



5. The plural ending **s** is sometimes pronounced (**s**), for example:



6. Some nouns have irregular plurals, for example:



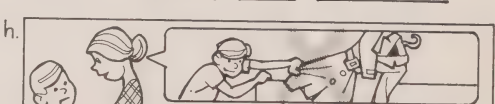
Listen. Circle what you hear, a or b.

1. a.  b. 	2. a.  b. 	3. a.  b. 	4. a.  b. 	5. a.  b. 
6. a.  b. 	7. a.  b. 	8. a.  b. 	9. a.  b. 	10. a.  b. 
11. a.  b. 	12. a.  b. 	13. a.  b. 	14. a.  b. 	15. a.  b. 

Make sentences. Use singular or plural.



Don't touch the shoes.



The answers are on page 129.

EXTRA STUDY: Spelling

1. Some singular nouns end in a consonant followed by **y**.

library factory

2. To make the plural noun, change **y** to **i** and add **es**.

libraries factories



3. Write the plural of each noun below in your notebook.

a. baby e. lady
b. fly f. body
c. butterfly g. spy
d. sky

4. If a vowel precedes the final **y**, keep the **y** and add **s**.

Singular: day boy
Plural: days boys



5. Write the plural of each noun below in your notebook.

a. key d. boy
b. donkey e. toy
c. way f. tray

EXTRA STUDY: Crossword Puzzle

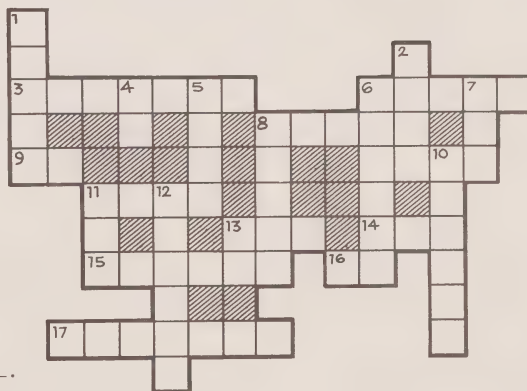
Look in the dictionary, if necessary.

Down:

1. Plural of "woman."
2. Can I ____ you?
4. The feminine pronoun is "she." The masculine pronoun is ____.
5. Part of the body, below the head.
6. Opposite of "open."
7. The number after nine.
8. Plural of "shoe."
10. The number before twelve.
11. You can carry money in this.
12. The same as no. 6 down.
13. Excuse ____.

Across:

3. You can wash your clothes in a washing ____.
6. Plural of "cent."
8. Opposite of "big."
9. Opposite of "yes."
11. Opposite of "front" and part of the body.
13. Plural of "man."
14. Short form of "evening."
15. These keep your hands warm.
16. Short form of "advertisement."
17. You usually need the sales ____ if you want to return an item to the store.



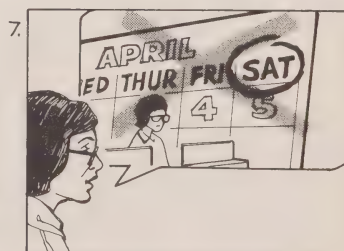
The answers are on page 129.

UNIT 14: IN THE POST OFFICE

CONVERSATION: Ana Goes to the Post Office



First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.

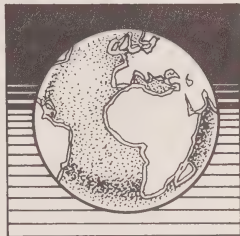


Words for Conversation on page 116.

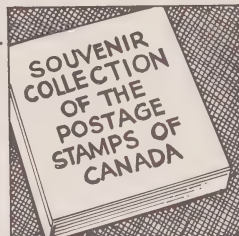
EXTENSION WITH CHOICES



Some people collect stamps.

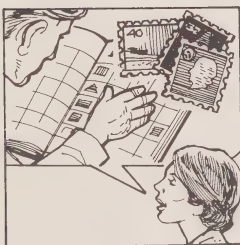


Stamp collecting is a worldwide hobby.

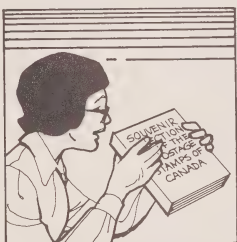


Every year, the Canadian Post Office puts out a souvenir collection of stamps.

Make two conversations:



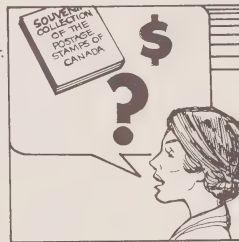
1. Do you have collectors' stamps?



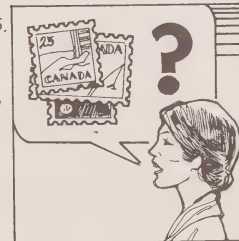
2. Yes. I have the souvenir album for this year.



3. No. I'm sorry we don't.



4. How much is it?



5. Where can I get some?



6. \$24.95.



7. You can write to Ottawa. Here's the address.



SPEAKING ACTIVITY

Ask some people in your class these questions:

Do you have time for a hobby? (If yes) what is it?

Write the names and answers in your notebook.

VOCABULARY: Stamps



- A. a one-cent stamp

B. a five-cent stamp

C. a ten-cent stamp

D. a twenty-five cent stamp
- E. a thirty-two-cent stamp

F. a thirty-seven-cent stamp

G. a sixty-four-cent stamp

H. a one-dollar stamp

Note that there is no s on the word **cent**. We don't make it plural.



COMMUNICATION ACTIVITY: Buying Stamps

Take a partner. One of you is A. The other one is B.

A.

Ask your partner for stamps.
You can say:
I need (four 32-cent stamps).

B.

Tell A the cost, for example:
That's (\$1.28).

Here are more examples.	
Five 32-cent stamps	\$1.60
One 32-cent stamp and one 37-cent stamp	.69
Three 64-cent stamps	1.92
Ten 64-cent stamps	6.40
Two 37-cent stamps	.74

READING AND WRITING: Customs Declaration

Ana sent a package to her parents in Chile. Here is some of the information that she put on the customs declaration form.

1. Name and Address of Sender Ana Pinto 21 Main St. Toronto M6Z 2P2 Ontario Canada		2. Name and Address of Addressee SRA. Gladys de Pinto Avenida Huérfanos 1778 Santiago, Chile					
3. Weight of Parcel		4. Declared Total Value \$ 51.00					
kg	g						
1	750						
5. No. of Items		Detailed List of Contents		6. Value		7. Net Weight	
				\$	¢	kg	g
1		pair shoes		35	00	1	500
1		blouse		16	00		250
8. Sender's Instructions in Case of Non-delivery							
a. Unless disposal instructions are given, the parcel will be returned without notice at sender's expense.							
b. If delivery of this parcel cannot be effected, dispose of it as checked below:							
9 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Return to origin (at sender's expense)				a <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> by surface			
				b <input type="checkbox"/> by air			
10 <input type="checkbox"/> Deliver or redirect to ►				Name and Address			
a <input type="checkbox"/> by surface				_____			
b <input type="checkbox"/> by air				_____			
11 <input type="checkbox"/> Treat the parcel as abandoned							

You want to send a package. Fill out this information for yourself.

1. Name and Address of Sender		2. Name and Address of Addressee					
3. Weight of Parcel		4. Declared Total Value \$					
kg	g						
5. No. of Items		Detailed List of Contents		6. Value		7. Net Weight	
				\$	¢	kg	g

USEFUL INFORMATION: Registered Mail



You are sending a package or letter to your friend by mail.



You want to be sure that it arrives.



You can register it. You can say: "I'd like to register this."



You pay money for registration and insurance. Keep the receipt.



The mail carrier hands the package to whoever answers the door.



That person signs his or her name.



If no one is at home,



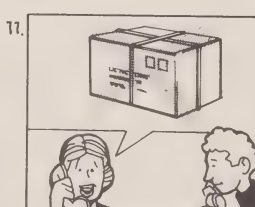
the mail carrier writes out a "Delivery Notice."



He leaves it for your friend.



Your friend takes it to the post office and gets the package.



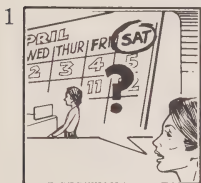
If your friend doesn't get the package,



you take the receipt to the post office and fill out a form to get the insurance money.

Some items can't be sent by registered mail, for example: cash, precious metal or precious stones. If you have any questions, ask at the post office.

GRAMMAR: Yes and No Questions with Is and Are



Statement: The post office **is** open on Saturday.

Question: **Is** the post office open on Saturday?



Statement: You **are** tired.

Question: **Are** you tired?

3. How to make questions with the verb be. Put the form of the verb be in front.



4. Make questions with Is.



Is he from Toronto?



Make questions with Are.



Are you hurt?



The answers are on page 130.

PRONUNCIATION: Is he vs. He is

- 1. The voice falls at the end of a statement.
He's from Toronto.
- 2. The voice usually rises at the end of a Yes or No question.
Is he from Toronto? Yes
- 3. However, the voice can sometimes fall at the end of a Yes or No question.
Is he from Toronto?
- 4. If the voice falls at the end of a Yes or No question, it can sound almost like a statement. Note that in a question, the **h** in the word **he** is often not pronounced. **Is he** is pronounced (izē).
Statement: He's from Toronto. Question: Is he from Toronto?
(izē).

5. Listen. Circle what you hear, a question or a statement.

- | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1a ? | 2a ? | 3a ? | 4a ? | 5a ? | 6a ? | 7a ? | 8a ? |
| b . | b . | b . | b . | b . | b . | b . | b . |

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1. Four thirty-two-cent stamps please. | 5. Two-fifty. |
| 2. That's a dollar twenty-eight. | 6. Are you open on Saturday? |
| 3. Thank you. | 7. No. I'm sorry. We're not. |
| 4. How much is this? | |


Other Sentences You May Hear

- Picture 4: How much does this cost to mail?
How much will this cost to mail?
- Picture 6: Is the post office open on Saturday?
Are you open on Saturdays?

UNIT 15: OCCUPATIONS


VOCABULARY: For the Conversation

1




musician

2




instruments

3




piano

4



clarinet


5




painter

CONVERSATION: Tony and Lou Talk About Their Occupations

a

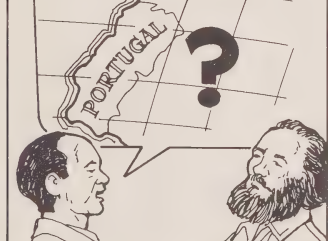


b




First, look at ALL the pictures. Then look at EACH picture.
WHAT IS THE PERSON SAYING? TRY TO GUESS.

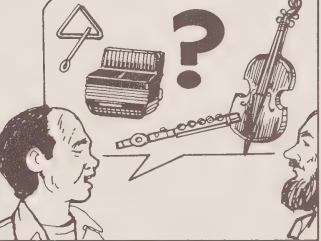
1




2




3




4



5

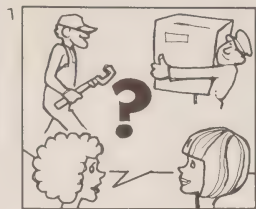


6

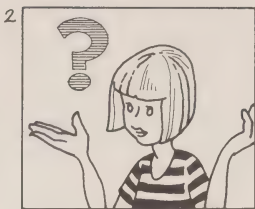


Words for the Conversation on page 119.

USEFUL INFORMATION: Looking for Good Service



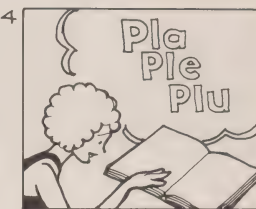
If you need a good plumber or mover, ask your friends.



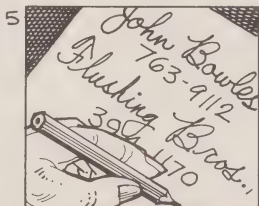
If your friends don't know any, there are other things you can do.



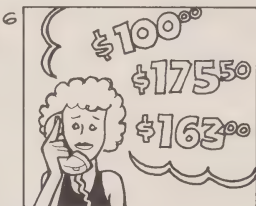
You can look in the Yellow Pages telephone directory.



The services are listed in alphabetical order.*



Write down two or three names and telephone numbers.



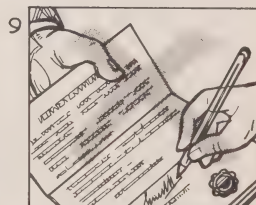
You can call these people and get two or three different prices.



You can also ask the Better Business Bureau if a company has had complaints.



If someone comes to your door to sell you a service,




don't sign anything right away. Take time to think about it.

* If you can't find the service, look in the index. In the Toronto Yellow Pages directory, there are two parts. Each part has a separate index.


In the White Pages directory, there is a section at the back which lists government services. These pages are blue.

READING: The Yellow Pages

Look in your Yellow Pages telephone book. Find these services and write the page numbers.

1. 

Opticians . . .
Optometrists, page _____

2. 

Dentists, page _____

3. Plumbing, page _____

4. Moving, page _____

5. Television Sales
and service, pages _____

6. Other _____, page _____

WORDS FOR THE CONVERSATION

1. What kind of work did you do in Portugal?
2. I was a musician.
3. What instruments did you play?

4. Piano and clarinet.
5. What about you?
6. I was a painter in China.

Other Sentences You May Hear

Picture 1: What did you do in Portugal?
What was your job in Portugal?




SPEAKING ACTIVITY: Occupations

- a. Tony's occupation is "musician." Can you say your occupation in English? If not, look in the dictionary or ask your teacher.
- b. Ask different people in your class what kind of work they did in their own country. You can say:

Where are you from?
or
What country are you from?
and

What did you do in (Portugal)?
or
What kind of work did you do in
(Portugal)?

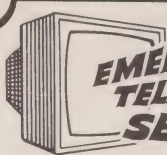
 In your notebook, write the name of each person, their country, and their occupation.

NAME	COUNTRY	OCCUPATION
------	---------	------------

READING: Advertisements from the Yellow Pages

Read these ads.

A



**EMERGENCY
TELEVISION
SERVICE**

**BROWN'S
ELECTRONICS**

10 YEARS
EXPERIENCE

**FAST
REPAIRS
CITY-WIDE**

**24 HOURS
7 DAYS A WEEK**

T.V. TECHNICIANS
CERTIFIED BY ONTARIO
DEPARTMENT OF LABOUR

*Written Guarantee
Reasonable Rates*

123 • 9799

B

**MAIN
STREET TV**

SERVICE • SALES • RENTALS

REPAIRS TO ALL MAKES •

ADMIRAL • GE • MAGNAVOX •
QUASAR • SONY • TOSHIBA •
ZENITH • AND MANY MORE...

HOME SERVICE 9am. - 8pm.

ITEMIZED WRITTEN GUARANTEE

3590 MAIN ST.

SALES 321-4567

SERVICE 999-8888

ESTABLISHED 1960

Answer these questions.

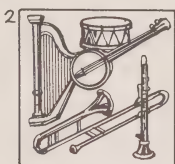
1. You want to buy a television. Where do you go?
2. Your television is broken. It's 10:00 p.m. Who do you call?
3. You have a Quasar television which is broken.
 - a. Who do you call?
 - b. What number do you call?
4. It's 7:00 p.m. Your television is broken and you want someone to come to your house to fix it. Who can you call?
5. You want to rent a television set for a period of time. Who do you call?
6. You want your television set fixed by someone who has a certificate from the Ontario Department of Labour. Who do you call?
7. Your television is broken. You want the company with the most experience. Who do you call?

The answers are on page 130.

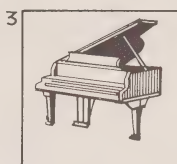
GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION: The Past Tense



I was a musician in Portugal.



What instruments did you play? [in Portugal]



I played piano and clarinet. [in Portugal]

4. **Was** is a past tense form of the verb **be**. **Played** is the past tense form of the verb **play**.

5. How to form the regular past tense form: add **ed** or **d** to the base form of the verb.

a. Base form:

play

b. Base form:

live

Past form:

play

ed



Past form:

live

d



6. Here are some more sentences in the past tense.

Lou

Lou was born in China.
He lived in China until he was 27 years old.
He worked in Peking.

7. Some verbs have irregular past tense forms, for example:

Base form: go have come eat

Past form: went had came ate

See page 131 for more examples.

Ana

Ana was born in Chile.
She lived with her mother and father in Chile.
She came to Canada alone.

8. Tell about yourself:

You

I
I
I

9. The past ending **ed** or **d** is sometimes pronounced (t), for example:

a. help	helped
b. work	worked
c. like	liked
d. walk	walked
e. look	looked
f. touch	touched
g. watch	watched

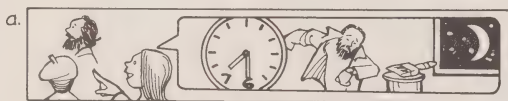
10. The past ending **ed** or **d** is sometimes pronounced (d) for example:

h. call	called
i. live	lived
j. play	played
k. turn	turned
l. spell	spelled
m. study	studied
n. try	tried

11. The past ending **ed** is pronounced (id) after **t** or **d** for example:

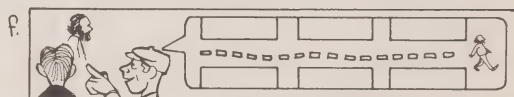
o. repeat	repeated	q. want	wanted
p. visit	visited	r. need	needed

12. Last night Tony was very busy. What did he do last night?



He worked until 7:30









The answers are on page 130.

13. To make past tense questions with all verbs except **be**, put **Did** before the noun or pronoun. Use the base form of the verb.



14. Here are some statements and questions in the past.

a. She ate lunch Did she eat lunch?
b. I worked. Did you work?

Answers:
Yes/No. Yes she did/No she didn't.
Yes/No. Yes I did/No I didn't.

15. Make questions in the past tense.



Did he work last night ?



Did they eat at eight o'clock ?







The answers are on page 130.

16. Find out how many people in your class watched television last night, and how many people went to bed after midnight.

PRONUNCIATION: Pronouns in Past Tense Questions

- 1. **Did he** is often pronounced (didē).
What instruments did he play?
Did he play the piano?
- 2. **Did you** is sometimes pronounced (didjü), (didjə), or (didyə).
What instruments did you play?
Did you play the clarinet?

3. Listen to each sentence that the teacher says.

Which pronoun do you hear — a, b or c. Write a, b or c.

a.



he

b.



she

c.



you



4. ____ 5. ____ 6. ____ 7. ____ 8. ____ 9. ____ 10. ____ 11. ____ 12. ____

PRONUNCIATION: The Past vs. The Present

Sometimes the past tense ending is difficult to hear.

now

13 a.



He looks sick.

last night

13 b.



He looked sick.

now

14 a.



I live on Queen St.

in 1980

14 b.



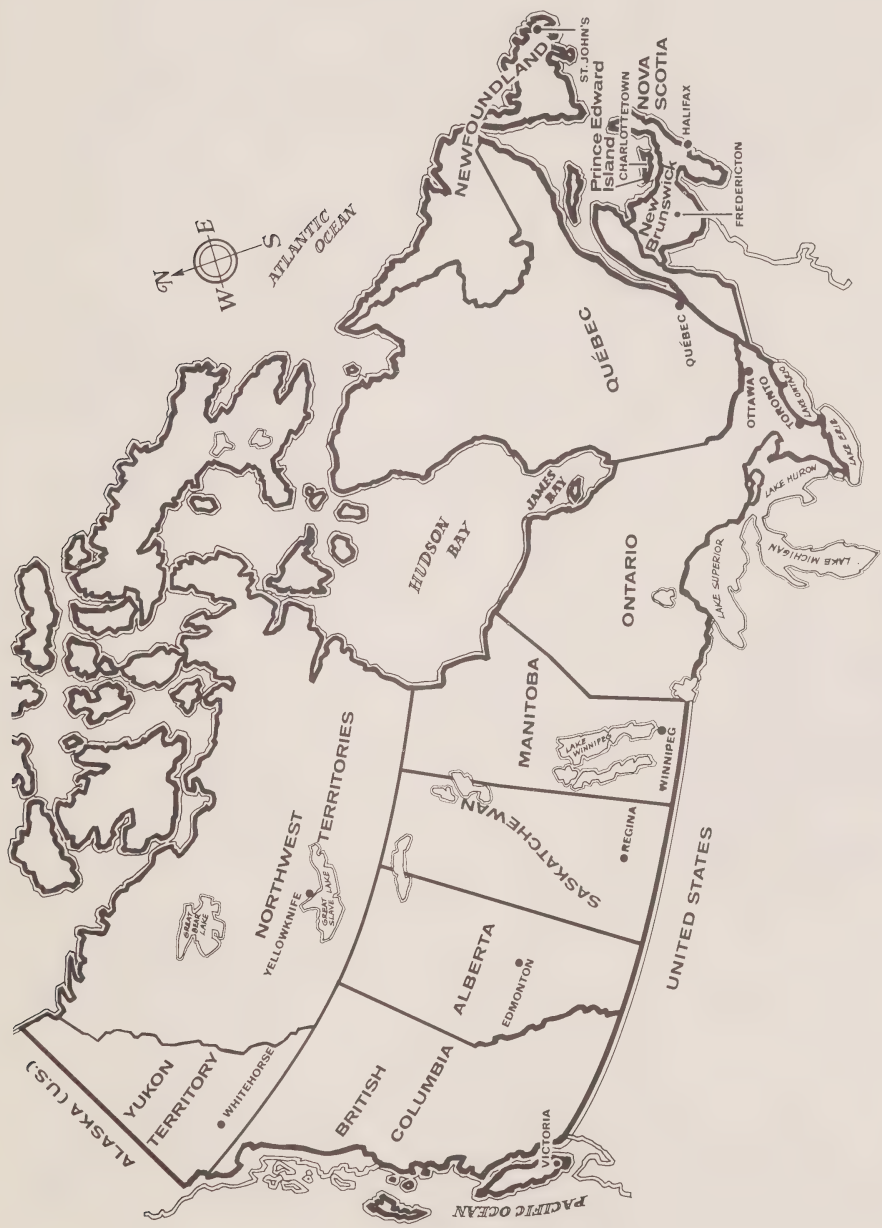
I lived on Queen St.



Listen to each sentence that the teacher says. Which do you hear, a. the present tense, or b. the past tense? Write a or b.

15. ____ 16. ____ 17. ____ 18. ____ 19. ____ 20. ____ 21. ____ 22. ____ 23. ____

MAP OF CANADA

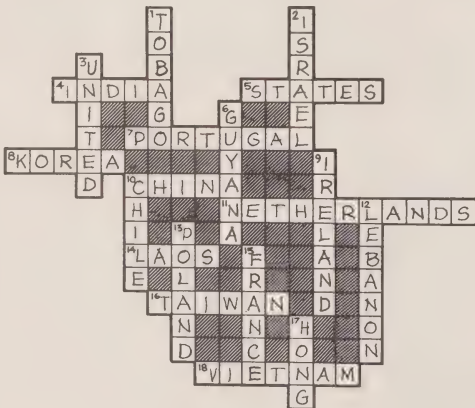


ANSWER KEY

Page 7

- | | |
|-------------|---------------------|
| 29 Chile | 17 Lebanon |
| 13 China | 23 Netherlands |
| 1 England | 26 Northern Ireland |
| 30 France | 20 Pakistan |
| 18 Germany | 8 Philippines |
| 22 Greece | 16 Poland |
| 9 Guyana | 7 Portugal |
| 6 Hong Kong | 11 Scotland |
| 5 India | 12 South Africa |
| 28 Iran | 25 Soviet Union |
| 24 Israel | 27 Taiwan |
| 10 Italy | 19 Trinidad-Tobago |
| 4 Jamaica | 2 United States |
| 14 Korea | 3 Vietnam |
| 15 Laos | 21 Yugoslavia |

Page 8



Page 10

- 2.E 3.D 4.A 5.F 6.B

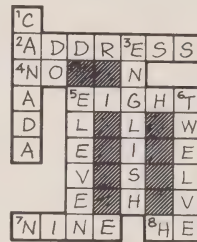
Page 13

- 3b. Do you have a dime?
c. Do you have a nickel?
d. Do you have a dollar?

Page 19

- 3d. I work on Queen Street.
e. Where do you live?
f. I live on Main Street.
g. Where do you work?
h. I work on College Street.

Page 20



Page 23

- Tony: 1. This is Lou.
2. Lou, this is Ana.
4. She's in my class.
Ana: 5. Nice to meet you.

Page 25

- 4b. He's from Sudbury.
c. She's from Ottawa.
d. He's from Quebec.
e. She's from Toronto.
f. He's from the United States.

Page 26

- | | | |
|---------|----------|----------|
| 6c. ① 2 | d. 1 ② 3 | e. ① 2 |
| f. ① 2 | g. ① 2 | h. 1 ② 3 |
| i. ① 2 | j. 1 ② 3 | k. 1 ② 3 |

Page 27

- 3B. grandmother

3C. grandfather

3D. mother

3E. father

3G. brother
- 4A. son

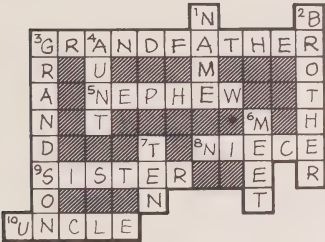
4C. husband

4D. daughter-in-law

4F. grandson

4G. grandson

Page 28



Page 29

- 2.B
- 3.A
- 4.E
- 5.C
- 6.G
- 7.F

Page 35

- c. 1 ② 3

d. ① 2

e. 1 ② 3 4
- f. ① 2 3

g. 1 ② 3 4

h. 1 ② 3 4
- i. ① 2

j. 1 ② 3

k. ① 2

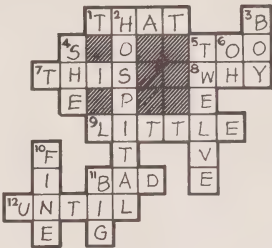
Page 39

Tony: 1. How's your little boy?
Lou: 3. He's still in the hospital.
Tony: 5. That's too bad.

Page 41

- 3b. I was at work last night.
- c. She was at the hospital last night.
- d. She was at work last night.
- e. He was at work last night.
- f. I was at the hospital last night.

Page 43



Page 51

- 4b. I live on King Street.
- c. I have change.
- d. I work on Main Street.
- f. I don't live on King Street.
- g. I don't have change.
- h. I don't work on Main Street.

Page 52

- 2.b
- 3.h
- 4.d
- 5.c
- 6.f
- 7.a
- 8.g

Page 59

- c. ① 2

d. 1 ②

e. ① 2
- f. ① 2

g. ① 2

h. 1 ②
- i. ① 2

j. ① 2

k. ① 2

ANSWER KEY

Page 60

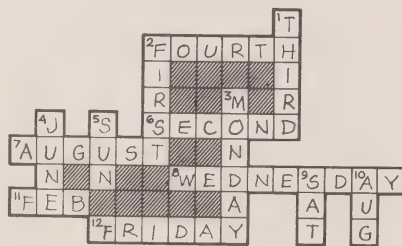
Here are some possible answers:

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| 2. English | 16. Polish |
| 3. Vietnamese | 17. Arabic |
| 4. English | 18. German |
| 5. Hindi, Punjabi | 19. English |
| 6. Chinese | 20. Urdu, Punjabi |
| 7. Portuguese | 21. Serbo-Croatian |
| 8. Tagalog | 22. Greek |
| 9. English | 23. Dutch |
| 10. Italian | 24. Hebrew |
| 11. English | 25. Russian |
| 12. Afrikaans, English | 26. English |
| 13. Chinese | 27. Chinese |
| 14. Korean | 28. Persian |
| 15. Lao | 29. Spanish |
| | 30. French |

Page 67

- 5c. He works until five-thirty.
d. She works until six.
f. He lives on King Street.
g. He lives on Simcoe Street.
h. She works on College Street.

Page 70



Page 73

3. No 4. Yes 5. 5C 6. 5A 7. No
8. Yes 9. 5B 10. 5C 11. No

Page 75

- 5b. Does she live on Main Street?
c. Does he work on Peter Street?
d. Does he live on Queen Street?
f. Does the bus go to College Street?
g. Does the bus go to Queen Street?
h. Does the bus go to King Street?

Page 78

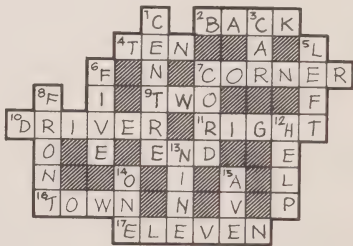
- 5c. Where does she live?
d. Where does he work?
e. Where does she work?
f. Where do you live?

Page 80

- c. 1 (2) 3 d. (1) 2 e. 1 (2) 3 4
f. (1) 2 3 g. 1 (2) 3 4 h. 1 (2) 3 4
i. (1) 2 j. 1 (2) 3 k. (1) 2

Page 81

- 2.A 3.E 4.B 5.F 6.D



Page 88

- c. the fourth floor
- d. the fourth floor
- e. the first floor
- f. the second floor
- g. the fifth floor
- h. the third floor
- i. the sixth floor
- j. the sixth floor
- k. the second floor
- l. the second floor

Page 89

- 4b. Where's the elevator?
- c. Where's the coffee-shop?
- d. Where's the telephone?
- f. What's your address?
- g. What's your postal code?
- h. What's your telephone number?

Page 91

- c. ① 2 3
- d. ① 2 3
- e. ① 2 3
- f. ① 2 3 4
- g. 1 ② 3 4
- h. ① 2 3
- i. ① 2 3 4
- j. ① 2 3
- k. ① 2 3 4 5

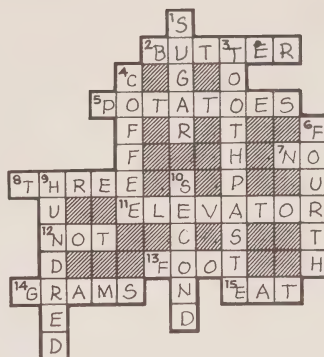
Page 96

- 6c. She likes coffee.
- d. She doesn't like tea.
- e. She likes milk.
- f. She doesn't like butter.
- g. He likes cereal.
- h. He doesn't like bread.

Page 97

- 9b. I don't have a pencil.
- c. He doesn't have change.
- d. She doesn't have a telephone.
- e. I don't have a watch.
- g. He doesn't work on King St.
- h. She doesn't work on Monday.
- i. I don't work on Main St.
- j. He doesn't work on Sunday.

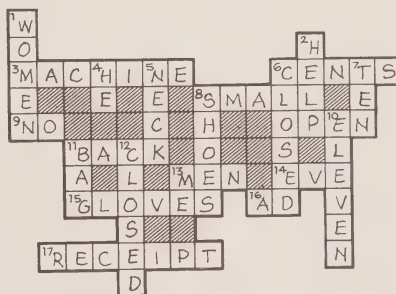
Page 99



Page 108

- b. Don't touch the telephone.
- c. Don't touch the dresses.
- d. Don't touch the gloves.
- e. Don't touch the clock.
- f. Don't touch the hats.
- g. Don't touch the pencils.
- h. Don't touch the coat.

Page 109



ANSWER KEY

Page 115

- 4b. Is she tired?
- c. Is the washroom one floor up?
- d. Is the library one floor down?
- f. Are you from Toronto?
- g. Are you tired?
- h. Are you from Ottawa?

Page 120

- 1. to Main Street TV
- 2. Brown's Electronics
- 3. a. Main Street TV
b. 999-8888
- 4. Brown's Electronics or
Main Street TV
- 5. Main Street TV
- 6. Brown's Electronics
- 7. Main Street TV

Page 122

- 12b. He ate at eight o'clock.
- c. He watched television.
- d. He played the piano.
- e. He played the clarinet.
- f. He walked three blocks.
- g. He visited friends.
- h. He called the hospital.

Page 123

- 16c. Did she watch television?
- d. Did you play the piano.
- e. Did she play the clarinet?
- f. Did he walk three blocks?
- g. Did they visit friends?
- h. Did you call the hospital?

APPENDIX

IRREGULAR VERBS

SIMPLE FORM	PAST FORM	SIMPLE FORM	PAST FORM
be	was, were	lend	lent
become	became	let	let
begin	began	lie	lay
bite	bit	lose	lost
blow	blew	make	made
break	broke	mean	meant
bring	brought	meet	met
build	built	put	put
burn	burnt (burned)	read	read
buy	bought	rid	rid
catch	caught	ride	rode
choose	chose	run	ran
come	came	say	said
cost	cost	see	saw
cut	cut	sell	sold
do	did	send	sent
draw	drew	set	set
dream	dreamt	shoot	shot
drink	drank	show	showed
drive	drove	sing	sang
eat	ate	sit	sat
fall	fell	sleep	slept
feel	felt	smell	smelt (smelled)
fight	fought	speak	spoke
find	found	spend	spent
fly	flew	spread	spread
forget	forgot	stand	stood
get	got	steal	stole
give	gave	stick	stuck
go	went	swim	swam
grow	grew	take	took
hang	hung	teach	taught
have	had	tear	tore
hear	heard	tell	told
hide	hid	think	thought
hit	hit	throw	threw
hold	held	try	tried
hurt	hurt	understand	understood
keep	kept	wake	woke
know	knew	wear	wore
lead	led	win	won
learn	learnt (learned)	write	wrote
leave	left		

INTRODUCTION TO PART 2

In Part 2 you will find out more about Ana Pinto, Tony Faria, and the Wong family: Lou, Su Ping, Ken and David; and starting in Unit 23, they will be real people in photographs, instead of illustrations. You will also find the language and the activities in Part 2 more challenging.

Here are some of the contents in Part 2:

UNIT	TITLE OF UNIT	TITLE OF CONVERSATION OR PHOTO STORY
16	YOUR FIRST JOB	Ana's First Job
17	INSISTING ON SAFETY	Ana Insists on Safety
18	MAKING COMPLAINTS	Lou's Family in the Restaurant
19	CALLING IN TO REPORT ABSENCE	Ana Calls in Sick
20	DAYCARE FOR YOUR CHILD	Su Ping Calls a Daycare Centre
21	IN THE DRUGSTORE	Getting a Prescription Filled
22	SUBJECTS AT SCHOOL	A Parent-Teacher Interview
23	INVITATION	A Neighbour Invites Ana in for Coffee
24	SOCIAL VISIT	Ana and Her Neighbour
25	JOB UPGRADING	Ana Talks to Her Employer
26	UNEMPLOYMENT INSURANCE	Tony is Out of Work
27	LOOKING FOR WORK	Tony Looks for a Job
28	APPLYING FOR A JOB	Tony Gets a Job
29	IN THE DOCTOR'S OFFICE	Tony Gets His Medical
30	GETTING A MISTAKE CORRECTED	Ana's Pay Cheque is Wrong
31	LOOKING FOR A ROOM	Ana Has to Move
32	TAKING A TRIP	The McMichael Canadian Collection



Ontario Ministry
of Citizenship
and Culture





3 1761 11470429 9